

DUBLIN	WILLIAM MCGEE, 18, NASSAU STREET
EDINBURGH	T G STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET
GLASGOW	OGLE & CO, 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE SQUARE
BERLIN	ASHER & CO, UNTER DEN LINDEN, 11
BOSTON, U S	DUTTON & CO
NEW YORK	C SCRIBNER & CO, LEYPOLDT & HOLT
PHILADELPHIA	J B LIPPINCOTT & CO

# Lancelot of the



A SCOTTISH METRICAL ROMANCE,

(ABOUT 1490-1500 A.D.)

RE-EDITED

FROM A MANUSCRIPT IN THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY,

WITH AN

INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIAL INDEX,

BY

THE REV W. W. SKEAT, M.A.,

LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND TRANSLATOR OF THE SONGS AND  
BALLADS OF UPLAND

[Second and Revised Edition, 1870]

LONDON

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N TRUBNER & CO, 60, PATERNOSTER ROW

MDCCCLXX



## P R E F A C E.

---

### I — DESCRIPTION OF THE MS , ETC

A FORMER edition of the present poem was printed for the Mantland Club, in 1839, and edited by Joseph Stevenson, Esq. It has saved me all trouble of transcription, but by no means, I am sorry to say, that of correction. Those who possess the older edition will readily perceive that it differs from the present one very frequently indeed, and that the variations are often such as considerably to affect the sense. Many of the errors in it (such as *casualtyee* for *casualtyee*, *gone*, for *gone*, *repent* for *repent*) are clearly typographical, but there are others which would incline me to believe that the transcription was too hastily executed, several passages being quite meaningless. Near the conclusion of Mr Stevenson's preface we read "The pieces which have been selected for the present volume<sup>1</sup> are printed with such errors of transcription as have crept into them by the carelessness of the scribe," a statement which certainly implies that there was no intention on his part of departing from the original. Yet that he sometimes unconsciously did so to such an extent as considerably to alter (or destroy) the sense, the reader may readily judge from a few examples —

<sup>1</sup> The volume contains other poems besides "Sir Lancelot."



LINE	EDITION OF 1539	TRUE READING OF THE MS
26	fatil ( <i>fatal</i> ),	fatit ( <i>fatal</i> )
285	unarmyt ( <i>unarmed</i> ),	enarmyt ( <i>fully armed</i> )
682	can here,	cam nere
700	rendit ( <i>rent</i> ),	wondit ( <i>wounded</i> )
764	refuse ( <i>refusal</i> ),	re prefo ( <i>defeat</i> )
861	felith ( <i>feebleth</i> ),	fitith ( <i>setteth</i> )
1054	vyt,	rvcht
1084	spenis,	spuris
1455	cunynge ( <i>coming</i> ),	cunynge ( <i>shall</i> )
1621	he war,	he war ( <i>be ware</i> )
1641	promys,	punys ( <i>punish</i> )
2010	ane desyne,	medysyne
2092	born,	lorn ( <i>lost</i> )
2114	havin,	harnu
2142	Hymene (!),	hyme ( <i>him</i> )
2219	such,	furth ( <i>forth</i> )
2245	al so y vroght,	al foly vroght.
2279	chichingis (!),	thithingis ( <i>tidings</i> )
2446	love,	lore ( <i>teaching</i> ) Etc

Several omissions also occur, as, e.g., of the word "off" in l 7, of the word "tressore" in l 1715, and of four whole lines at a time in two instances, viz, lines 1191-4, and 2877-80. It will be found, in fact, that the former text can seldom be safely quoted for the purposes of philology, and I cannot but think Mr Stevenson's claim of being accurate to be especially unfortunate, and the more so, because the genuine text is much simpler and more intelligible than the one which he has given.

The original MS is to be found in the Cambridge University Library, marked Kk 1 5. It formerly formed part of a thick volume, labelled "Tracts," but these are now being separated, for greater convenience, into several volumes. The MS of "Lancelot" has little to do with any of the rest as regards its subject, but several other pieces are in the same hand-writing, and, at the end of one of them, an

abstract of Solomon's proverbs, occur the words, "Explicunt Dicta Salamonis, per manum V de F"<sup>1</sup> This hand-writing, though close, is very regular, and my own impression certainly is that the scribe has almost always succeeded in preserving the sense of the poem, though there is much confusion in the dialectal forms, as will be shewn presently

The present text is as close a fac-simile of the MS as can be represented by printed letters, every peculiarity being preserved as far as practicable, even including the use of *y* for *p* (or *th*), so that the reader must remember that *yow* in l 94 stands for *thow*, and *ys* in l 160 for *this*, and so on, but this ought not to cause much difficulty The sole points of difference are the following

1 In the MS the headings "Prologue," "Book I " etc , do not occur

2 The lines do not always begin (in the MS ) with a capital letter

3 The letters *italicised* are (in the MS ) represented by signs of contraction One source of difficulty is the flourish over a word, used *sometimes* as a contraction for *m* or *n* I have expanded this flourish as an *m* or *n* wherever such letter is manifestly required , but it also occurs where it is best to attach to it no value In such instances, the flourish occurs most frequently over the last word in a line, and (except very rarely) only over words which have an *m* or *n* in them It would thus seem that their presence is due to the fact of the scribe wanting employment for his pen after the line had been written, and that the flourish therefore appears over certain words, not so much because the *n* is *wanting* in them, as because it is *there already* Such words have a special attraction for the wandering pen Still, in order that the reader

<sup>1</sup> See Mr Lumby's editions of "Early Scottish Verse" and "Ratis Raving," both edited for the E E T S from this MS Only the latter of these is in the hand writing of V de F

may know wherever such flourishes occur, they have all been noted down, thus, in l 46, the stroke over the *n* in "gren" means that a long flourish occurs drawn over the whole word, and the reader who wishes to expand this word into "grene" or "grenn" may easily do it for himself, though he should observe that the most usual form of the word is simply "gren," as in lines 1000, 1305

In a few nouns ending in *-l*, the plural is indicated by a stroke drawn through the doubled letter, as in *perillis*, *sadillis*, etc., and even the word *ellis* (else) is thus abbreviated

4 I am responsible for all hyphens, and letters and words between square brackets, thus, "with-uten" is in the MS "with outen," and "knych[t]ly" is written "knychly" Whenever a line begins with a capital letter included between two brackets, the original has a blank space left, evidently intended for an illuminated letter. Wherever illuminated letters actually occur in the MS, they are denoted in this edition by large capitals

5 We find, in the MS, both the long and the twisted *s* (f and s). These have been noted down as they occur, though I do not observe any law for their use. The letter "ß" has been adopted as closely resembling a symbol in the MS, which apparently has the force of double *s*, and is not unlike the "sz" used in modern German hand-writing. It may be conveniently denoted by *ss* when the type "ß" is not to be had, and is sometimes so represented in the "Notes"

6 The MS is, of course, not punctuated. The punctuation in the present edition is mostly new, and many passages, which in the former edition were meaningless, have thus been rendered easily intelligible. I am also responsible for the headings of the pages, the abstract at the sides of them, the numbering of the folios in the margin, the notes, and the glossary, which I hope may be found useful. The greatest

care has been taken to make the text accurate, the proof-sheets having been compared with the MS *three times* throughout<sup>1</sup>

## II—DESCRIPTION OF THE POEM

The poem itself is a loose paraphrase of not quite fourteen folios of the first of the three volumes of the French Romance of Lancelot du Lac, if we refer to it as reprinted at Paris in 1513, in three volumes, thin folio, double-columned<sup>2</sup> The English poet has set aside the French Prologue, and written a new one of his own, and has afterwards translated and amplified that portion of the Romance which narrates the invasion of Arthur's territory by "le roy de oultre les marches, nomme galehault" (in the English *Gahiot*), and the defeat of the said king by Arthur and his allies

The Prologue (lines 1-334) tells how the author undertook to write a romance to please his lady-love, and how, after deciding to take as his subject the story of Lancelot as told in the French Romance, yet finding himself unequal to a close translation of the whole of it, he determined to give a para-

<sup>1</sup> This refers to the edition printed in 1865. In executing the present reprint, the proof sheets have been once more compared with the MS, and a very few insignificant errors have been thus detected and rectified.

<sup>2</sup> "As to the Romance of Sir Lancelot, our author [Gower], among others on the subject, refers to a volume of which he was the hero, perhaps that of Robert de Borron, altered soon afterwards by Godefroy de Leigny, under the title of *Le Roman de la Charrette*, and printed, with additions, at Paris by Antony Verard, in the year 1494.

For if thou wilt the bokes rede  
Of Launcelot and other mo,  
Then might thou seen how it was tho  
Of armes," etc. (GOWER *Confessio Amantis*, Book iv)

Quoted from Warton's English Poetry, vol ii, p 234, ed 1840. I quote this as bearing somewhat on the subject, though it should be observed that *Le Roman de la Charrette* is not the same with *Lancelot du Lac*, but only a romance of the same class. Chaucer also refers to Lancelot in his Nonnes Priestes Tale, l 392, and it is mentioned in the famous lines of Dante (*Inf* v 127)—

"Noi leggevamo un giorno per diletto  
Di Lancilotto, come amoi lo strinse," &c

phrase of a portion of it only After giving us a brief summary of the earlier part by the simple process of telling us what he will *not* relate, he proposes to begin the story at the point where Lancelot has been made prisoner by the lady of Melyhalt, and to take as his subject the wars between Arthur and Galiot, and the distinction which Lancelot won in them, and afterwards to tell how Lancelot made peace between these two kings, and was consequently rewarded by Venus, who

“maketh hyme his ladice grace to have” (l 311)

The latter part of the poem, it may be observed, has not come down to us The author then concludes his Prologue by beseeching to have the support of a very celebrated poet, whose name he will not mention, but will only say that

“Ye fresch enditing of his laiting tounge  
Out through yis world so wid is young,” etc<sup>1</sup> (l 328)

The first Book introduces us to King Arthur at Carlisle<sup>2</sup> The king is visited by dreams, which he imagines to forebode misfortune, he therefore convokes all his clerks, and inquires of them the meaning of the dreams, proposing to hang them in the event of their refusal Thus strongly urged, they tell him that those on whom he most relies will fail him at his need, and when he further inquires if this evil fate can be averted, they answer him very obscurely that it can only be remedied by help of the water-lion, the leech, and the flower, a reply which the king evidently regards as unsatisfactory Soon after an aged knight, fully armed, enters the palace, with a message from King Galiot, requiring him to give “tribute and rent” Arthur at once refuses, somewhat to the astonishment of the knight, who is amazed at his hardihood Next arrives a message from the lady of Melyhalt, informing Arthur of the

<sup>1</sup> He does not necessarily imply that the poet invoked was still alive, and we might almost suppose Petrarch to be meant, who was more proud of his Latin poem called “Africa” than of his odes and sonnets. See Hallam’s Literary History (4 vols), vol 1, p 86 But this is pure conjecture

<sup>2</sup> But the French has “Cardueil” See l 2153



actual presence of Galiot's army. We are then momentarily introduced to Lancelot, who is pining miserably in the lady's custody. Next follows a description of Galiot's army, at sight of the approach of which King Arthur and his "niece," Sir Gawain, confer as to the best means of resistance. In the ensuing battle Sir Gawain greatly distinguishes himself, but is at last severely wounded. Sir Lancelot, coming to hear of Sir Gawain's deeds, craves leave of the lady to be allowed to take part in the next conflict, who grants him his boon on condition that he promise to return to his prison. She then provides for him a red courser, and a complete suit of red armour, in which guise he appears at the second battle, and is the "head and comfort of the field," the queen and Sir Gawain beholding his exploits from a tower. The result of the battle convinces Galiot that Arthur is not strong enough at present to resist him sufficiently, and that he thus runs the risk of a too easy, and therefore dishonourable, conquest, for which excellent reason he grants Arthur a twelvemonth's truce, with a promise to return again in increased force at the expiration of that period. Sir Lancelot returns to Melyhalt according to promise, and the lady is well pleased at hearing the reports of his famous deeds, and visits him when asleep, out of curiosity to observe his appearance after the fight.

In the Second Book the story makes but little progress, nearly the whole of it being occupied by a long lecture or sermon delivered to Arthur by a "master," named Amytans, on the duties of a king, the chief one being that a king should give presents to everybody—a duty which is insisted on with laborious tediousness. Lines 1320-2130 are almost entirely occupied with this subject, and will be found to be the driest part of the whole narrative. In the course of his lecture, Amytans explains at great length the obscure prophecy mentioned above, shewing that by the water-lion is meant God the Father, by the leech God the Son, and by the flower the Virgin

May Though the outline of a similar lecture exists in the old French text, there would seem to be a special reason for the length to which it is here expanded. Some lines certainly seem to hint at events passing in Scotland at the time when the poem was composed. Thus, "kings may be excused when of tender age" (l. 1658), but when they come to years of discretion should punish those that have wrested the law. Again we find (l. 1920) strong warnings against flatterers, concluding (l. 1940) with the expression,

"Wo to the realme that haviþ such o chums"

Such hints may remind us of the long minorities of James II and James III, and, whilst speaking on this subject, I may note a somewhat remarkable coincidence. When King Arthur, as related in Book I, asks the meaning of his dream, he is told that it signifies that "they in whom he most trusts will fail him" (l. 499), and he afterwards laments (l. 1151) how his "men fail him at need". Now when we read that a story is current of a prophetess having told James III that he was destined to "fall by the hands of his own kindred,"<sup>1</sup> and that that monarch was in the habit of consulting *astrologers*<sup>2</sup> (compare l. 432) as to the dangers that threatened him, it seems quite possible that the poem was really composed about the year 1478; and this supposition is consistent with the fact that the hand-writing of the present MS. copy belongs to the very end of the fifteenth century.

Towards the end of the Second Book, we learn that the twelvemonth's truce draws near its end, and that Sir Lancelot again obtains permission from the lady to be present in the approaching combat, choosing this time to be arrayed in "armys al of blak" (l. 2426).

<sup>1</sup> Tytler's History of Scotland (Edinburgh, 1841), vol. iv, p. 216.

<sup>2</sup> The French text does not say anything about "astronomy". We may especially note the following lines, as *not* being in the French, viz., lines 1478, 1496, 1523-1542, 1599-1644, 1658-1680, and the long passage 1752-1998.

In the Third Book Gaiot returns to the fight with a host thrice as large as his former one. As before, Gawain distinguishes himself in the first encounter, but is at length so "evil wounded" that he was "the worse thereof evermore" (l. 2706). In the second combat, the black knight utterly eclipses the red knight, and the last thousand (extant) lines of the poem are almost wholly occupied with a description of his wonderful prowess. At the point where the extant portion of the poem ceases, the author would appear to be just warming with his subject, and to be preparing for greater efforts.

In continuance of the outline of the story, I may add that the French text<sup>1</sup> informs us how, after being several times remounted by Gaiot, and finding himself with every fresh horse quite as fresh as he was at the beginning of the battle, the black knight attempted, as evening fell, to make his way back to Melyhalt secretly. Gaiot, however, having determined not to lose sight of him, follows and confronts him, and earnestly requests his company to supper, and that he will lodge in his tent that night. After a little hesitation, Lancelot accepts the invitation, and Gaiot entertains him with the utmost respect and flattery, providing for him a most excellent supper and a bed larger than any of the rest. Lancelot, though naturally somewhat wearied, passes a rather restless night, and talks a good deal in his sleep. Next day Gaiot prays him to stay longer, and he consents on condition that a boon may be granted him, which is immediately acceded to without further question. He then requests Gaiot to submit himself to Arthur, and to confess himself vanquished, a demand which so amazes that chieftain that he at first refuses, yet succeeds in persuading Lancelot to remain with him a little longer. The day after, preparations are made for another battle, on which occasion Lancelot wears Gaiot's armour, and is at first mistaken for him, till Sir Gawain's acute vision detects that the armour

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix



written in the Lowland Scottish dialect (the whole tone of the poem going to prove this), as shewn by the use of *ch* for *gh*, as in *bricht* for *bright*, (unless this be wholly due to the scribe), by the occurrence of plurals in *-is*, of verbal preterites and passive participles in *-it*, and of words peculiarly Scottish, such as *syne* (afterwards), *aneily* (only), *lawf* (remainder), *oft-syss* (oft-times), etc. Moreover, the Northern *i* is clearly indicated by the occurrence of such dissyllables as *gai-t*, 2777, *law-g*, 2845, *fir-st*, 2958, 3075, with which compare the significant spellings *harimful*, 1945, and *fuirde*, 2583. But, on the other hand, it would appear as if either the author or the copyist had no great regard for pure dialect, and continually introduces Southern and Midland forms, mixing them together in an indiscriminate and very unusual manner. We find, for example, in line 1765,

“Beith larg and iffis fiedy of thi thing,”

the Scottish form *iffis* (give) and the Southern *beith* in close conjunction, and we find no less than six or seven forms of the plural of the past tense of the verb “to be,” as, for example, *war* (3136), *weu* (818), *wane* (825), *waren* (3301), *veryng* (2971), *uaryng* (443), etc. If we could suppose that the scribe was not himself a Scotchman, we might in some measure account for such a result, but the supposition is altogether untenable, as the peculiar character of the hand-writing (resembling that found, not in English, but in French MSS) decides it to be certainly Scottish, as is also evident from the occurrence, in the same hand-writing, of a Scotticised version of Chaucer’s “Flee from the press”

The best that can be done is to collect a few instances of peculiarities

1 The broad Northumbrian forms *a*, *ane*, *barth*, *fi a*, *ga*, *hauil*, *hame*, *knav*, *law*, *sa*, *wat*, although occasionally retained, are also at times changed into *o*, *one*, *bouth*, *fi o*, *go*, *holl*, *hom*, *know*,

*low*, so, and *uot* Thus, at the end of l 3246, we find *hauſt*, which could not have been altered without destroying the rime, but in l 3078, we find it changed, in the middle of the line, into *holl* In l 3406, we find *sa*, but only three lines further on we find *so* twice

So, too, we not only find *tane* (taken), *gaus* (goes), but also the forms *tone* and *goſ* See lines 1071, 1073

2 The true plural form of the verb is shewn by lines 203, 204,  
 "Of quhois fame and worschipful dedis  
 Clerkis into diuerſ bukis *redis*,"

where alteration would have ruined the rime utterly, and the same termination (*-is*) is correctly used in the imperative mood, as, ——"fo *griffis* ws delay" (l 463),

"And of thi wordis *beis* trew and stable" (l 1671),

but the termination *-ith* is continually finding its way into the poem, even as early as in the fourth line,

"*Uprisith* arly in his fyre chare,"

and in the imperative mood also, as,

"*Remembrith* now it stondith one the poynt" (l 797)

The most singular point of all, however, is this—that, not content with changing *-is* into *-ith* in the 3rd person singular, the scribe has done the same even in the 2nd person, thus producing words which belong to no pure example of any distinct dialect Observe the following lines —

"O woful wrech, that *levis* in to were !  
 To schew the thus the god of loue me sent,  
 That of thi seruice no thing is content,  
 For in his court yhoue [= thou] *leuith* in disspar,  
 And vilfully *sustenis* al thi care,  
 And *schapith* no thinge of thine awn remede,  
 Bot *clepith* ay and *cryth* apone dede," etc (ll 84 90)

Here *levis* is altered into *leuith*, not only unnecessarily, but quite wrongly For similar mistakes, see ll 1019, 1369, 1384,

2203 For examples of correct usage, see ll 1024, 1337, 1796, 2200, 2201

3 But the terminations which are used in the most confused manner of all are *-en*, *-yne*, and *-ing* or *-yng*. Thus we find the non-Scottish infinitives, *telen* (494), *mahine* (191), the constant substitution of *-ing* for *-and* in the present participle,<sup>1</sup> a confusion between the past participial ending *-ine* (more correctly *-yn*), and the present ending *-and*, thus producing such forms as *thimkine* (34), and *besichyne* (418), and also a confusion between *-ing* and the past participial ending *-en*, as *fundyng* for *funden* (465), *falling* for *fallen* (1217, 1322, 3267), *swellyng* for *swollen* (1222), and *halding* for *halden* (2259). We even find *-ing* in the infinitive mood, as in *auysing* (424), *viting* (to know, 410), *smytung* (1326), *warnnyng* (1035), *passing* (2148), *scheuing* (2736), etc., and, lastly, it occurs in the plural of the indicative present, instead of the Midland *-en*, as in *passing* (1166), *biding* (2670), and *leuyng* (3304).<sup>2</sup>

It may safely be concluded, however, that the frequent occurrence of non-Scottish infinitives must not be attributed to the copyist, since they are probably due rather to the author, for in such a line as

“Of his desir to viting the sentens” (l 410),

the termination *-ing* is required to complete the rhythm of the line

In the same way we must account for the presence of the prefix *v-*, as in the line

“Quharwith that al the gardinge was I clede” (l 50)

<sup>1</sup> We find the true forms occasionally, as *obersand* (641), *plesand* (1731), *thimkand* (2173), *prekand* (3089), and *fechtand* (3127). Compare the form *servand* (122).

<sup>2</sup> “The Scottish pronunciation of *ing* was already, as it still is, *een*, and the writer, knowing that the correct spelling of *dwelling*, for example, was *dwelthng*, fancied also that *fallen*, *halden* (Sc *fallyn*, *haldyn*) were *falling*, *haldyng*. Lyndesay and Gawain Douglas often do the same. Compare *gardinge* (l 50), *larting* (l 327).”—J. A. H. Murray

This prefix never occurs in vernacular Scottish, but we may readily suppose that this and other numerous Southern forms of words are due (as in Gawain Douglas and Lyndesay) to the author's familiarity with Chaucer's poems, as evinced by the similarity of the rhythm to Chaucer's, and by the close resemblance of several passages. Compare, for instance, the first seventy lines of the Prologue with the opening passages of "The Flower and the Leaf," and "The Complaint of the Black Knight," and see notes to ll 432, 1608. Indeed, this seems to be the only satisfactory way of accounting for the various peculiarities with which the poem abounds.

Mr J A H Murray, in his remarks printed in the preface to Mr Lumby's edition of "Early Scottish Verse," comes to a similar conclusion, and I here quote his words for the reader's convenience and information. "There is no reason, however, to suspect the scribe of *wilfully* altering his original, indeed, the reverse appears manifest, from the fact that the 'Craft of Deyng' has not been assimilated in orthography to 'Ratis Raving,' but distinctly retains its more archaic character, while in 'Sir Lancelot,' edited by Mr Skeat for the Early English Text Society, from the handwriting of the same scribe, we have a language in its continual Anglicisms quite distinct from that of the pieces contained in this volume, of which the Scotch is as pure and unmixed as that of the contemporary Acts of Parliament. With regard to the remarkable transformation which the dialect has undergone in Sir Lancelot, there seems reason, therefore, to suppose that it was not due to the copyist of the present MS, but to a previous writer, if not to the author himself, who perhaps affected *southernism*, as was done a century later by Lyndesay and Knox, and other adherents of the English party in the Reformation movement. The Southern forms are certainly often shown by the rhyme to be original, and such a form as *tone* for *tane* = taken, is more likely to have been that of a Northerner trying to write.

Southern, than of a Southern scribe, who knew that no such word existed in his dialect. The same may be said of the *th* in the second person singular. A Scotch writer, who observed that Chaucer said *he lweth*, where he himself said *he lyres*, might be excused for supposing that he would also have said *thou lweth* for the Northern *thow lyres*, but we can hardly fancy a Southern copyist making the blunder.

4 We find not only the Northumbrian forms *sall* and *suld*, but also *shall*, *shalt*, and *shuld*.

5 As regards pronouns, we find the Scottish *scho* (she) in l 1169, but the usual form is *sche*. We find, too, not only the broad forms *thai*, *thau*, *thaim*, but also *thei* (sometimes *the*), *ther*, and *them*. As examples of forms of the relative pronoun, we may quote *uho*, *quho*, *uhois*, *quhois* (whose), *quhom*, *quhome* (whom), *quhat*, *qichat* (what), and *uwhik*, *quhik*, *quwhik*, *quich*, *wich* (which). *Wich* is used instead of *who* (l 387), and we also find *the wich*, or *the wich that*, similarly employed. The nominative *who* does not perhaps occur as a *simple* relative, but has the force of *whoso*, or *he who*, as *e g*, in l 1102, or else it is used interrogatively, as in l 1172.

6 Many other peculiarities occur, which it were tedious to discuss fully. It may suffice, perhaps, to note briefly these following. We find both the soft sound *ch*, as in *wich*, *sich*, and the hard sound *h*, as in *whik*, *rehe* (reach), *stiehe* (stretch), etc., which are the true Northern forms.

*Mo* is used as well as *more*.

*Tho* occurs for *then* in l 3184, and for *the* in l 247.

*At* occurs as well as *that*, *atte* as well as *at the*, 627, 1055.

The short forms *ma* (make), *ta* (take), *sent* (sendeth), *stant* (standeth), are sometimes found, the two former being Northumbrian.

*Has* is used twice as a plural verb (ll 481, 496).<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "The plural in Scottish always ends in *s* after a noun or when the verb is separated from its pronoun, we still say *the men hes*, *the barns sings*, *them*



*ȝha* (yes) occurs in l 2843, but we also meet with *ȝhis*, or *ȝis*, with reference to which Mr Morris writes —“The latter term was not much in favour with the people of the North. Even now *yes* sounds offensive to a Lancashire man. ‘Hoo cou’d naw opp’n hur meawth t’ sey *eygh* (yea) or *now* (no), boh simpurt on sed *iss*, th’ dickons *iss* hur on him too — *Tim Bobbin*’” In fact, the distinction between *ȝha* and *ȝhis*, which I have pointed out in *William of Palerne* (Glossary, s v *ȝis*), viz, that *ȝha* merely assents, whilst *ȝhis* shews that the speaker has an opinion of his own, is in this poem observed. Thus, in l 2843, *ȝha* = “yes, I admit that I do,” but in l 514, *ȝis* = “yes, but you had better do so,” in l 1397, *ȝhis* = “yes, indeed I will,” and in l 3406, *ȝis* = “yes, but I cannot accept your answer”<sup>1</sup>. The true distinction between *thou* and *ye* (*William of Palerne*, Pief p xli) is also generally observed. Thus the Green Bird, in the Prologue, considers the poet to be a fool, and calls him *thou*, but the clerks, in addressing Arthur (l 498) politely say *ye*. And again, Amytans, when rebuking Arthur, frequently calls him *thou*, without any ceremony. Cf ll 659, 908, 921, 2839, &c.

As regards the vocabulary, we find that some Northumbrian terms have been employed, but others thrown aside. Thus, while we find the Northumbrian words *thur* (these), *traist* (trust), *newis* (neives, fists), *radour* (fear), etc, we do not, on the other hand, meet with the usual Scottish word *murk*, but observe it to be supplanted by *duk* (l 2471). So, again, *eke* is used in the sense of *also*, instead of being a verb, as more usual in Northern works. We may note, too, the occurrence of *frome* as well as *fra*, and the Scottish form *thyne-furth* (thenceforth) in l 2196.

<sup>1</sup>at *cums*, not *have*, *sing*, *come*. Notice the frequent use of *th* for *t*, as in l 497, *Presumyth* = *presumit*, presumed, it being presumed.—J A H Murray [Or, *presumyth* may be the pl imperative, as in *Remembrith* (l 797), already noticed.—ED.]

<sup>1</sup> “This *ȝis* is the common form in the Scottish writers, though *ay* is largely the modern vernacular.”—J A H Murray

The spelling is very various. We find even four forms of one word, as *cusynace*, *cusynece*, *cusynes*, *cusynes*, and, as examples of eccentric spelling, may be quoted *qsquyaris* (squires, l 3204), whilst in l 3221 we find *squar*.

Both in the marginal abstract and in the notes I have chiefly aimed at removing minor difficulties by explaining sentences of which the construction is peculiar, and words which are disguised by the spelling. For the explanation of more uncommon words, recourse should be had to the Glossarial Index.

## APPENDIX.

---

### EXTRACTS FROM THE FRENCH ROMANCE OF “LANCELOT DU LAC”

As it seems impossible to do justice to the story of Lancelot without giving due attention to the famous French Romance, and since a portion of the French text is really necessary to complete even that fragment of it which the Scottish author proposed to write, the following extracts have been made with the view of shewing (1) the general outline of the earlier part of the story, (2) the method in which the Scottish author has expanded or altered his original, and (3) the completion of the story of the wars between Arthur and Galiot<sup>1</sup>

I Headings of the chapters of the French Romance, from its commencement to the end of the wars with Galiot

[The commas are inserted by the present editor, and the expansions marked by italics]

¶ Cy commence la table du premier volume de la table ronde lancelet du lac

¶ Comment apres la mort de vterpandragon roy du royaume de logres, & apres la mort aramon, roy de la petite bretagne, le roy claudas de la terre Descosse mena guerre contre le roy ban de benoic et le roy boort de gauues tant quil les desherita<sup>2</sup> de leurs terres Fueillet 1

Claudas king of  
Scotland de  
pirves king Ban  
and king Boort  
of their lands

<sup>1</sup> The extracts are from the Paris edition of 1513, 3 vols folio, a copy of which is in the King's Library in the British Museum. There are also two other editions in the Museum, one in the Grenville Library, 3 vols Paris, 1494, folio, the other in one folio volume, Paris, 1520 <sup>2</sup> See li 1447 1449



Claudas besieges Ban in the Castle of Tribble	¶ Comment le roy claudas assiegea le chasteau de tribble auquel estoit le roy ban de benoie, et comment ilz parlementerent ensemble f	1
King Ban, his wife and his son Lancelot repair to the court of Arthur	¶ Comment le roy ban de benoie, accompagne de sa femme et de son filz lancelet, avecques vng seul escuyer, se parturent du chasteau de tribble pour aller querir secours deuers le roy Artus a la grant bretagne Fueillet	11
The Castle of Tribble is treacherously given up to Claudas	¶ Comment apres ce que le roy ban fut party de son chasteau de tribble, le seneschal a qui il auoit baillie la garde trahit ledit chasteau, et le liura es mains du roy claudas Fueillet	11
King Ban dies of grief and Lancelot is taken away by the lady of the lake	¶ Comment le roy ban mourut de duel quant il vint son chasteau ardon et brouyr Et comment la dame du lac emporta son filz lancelet <sup>1</sup> Fueillet	111
	¶ Comment la royne helune, apres que le roy fut mort et elle eut perdu son filz, se iendit nonnain en labbaye du monstier royal Fueillet	v
The two sisters widows of kings Ban and Boort retreat to a monastery	¶ Comment le roy de gauues mourut & comment la Royne sa femme, pour pource de claudas, sen partit de son chasteau pour aller au monstier royal, ou sa seur cestant rendue et comment ces enfans Lyonnell et Boort luy furent ostez Fueillet	vi
	¶ Comment la royne de Gauues, apres que son seigneur fut mort et que elle eut perdu ses deux enfans, se vint rendre au monastere ou estoit sa seur la royne de benoie Fueillet	vi
Merlin's love for the lady of the lake	¶ Comment meulin fut engendre du dyable Et comment il fut amoureux de la dame du lac Fueillet	vii
Sir Farien secretly nourishes the two sons of king Boort, and is made seneschal to king Claudas	¶ Comment le cheualier farien, qui auoit tollu a la royne de Gauues ses deux enfans, les emporta en sa maison   et les feist nourrir vne espace de temps Et comment le roy claudas fut amoureux de la femme du dict Farien   et pource le fist son seneschal Fueillet	viii
Claudas accuses Sir Farien of treason	¶ Comment le roy claudas fist appeler son cheualier farien de trahison par ladmonnestement de sa femme, disant quil gardoit les deux enfans du roy boort de gauues Fueillet	xi
Claudas, in disguise visits Arthur's court	¶ comment le roy claudas en maniere de cheualier estrange, se partit du royaume de gauues pour aller en la grant bretagne a la court du roy artus pour veoir sa puissance & son gouuernement Fueillet	x
The lady of the lake informs Lancelot that he is a king's son	¶ Comment la dame du lac bailla a lancelet vng maistre pour linstruyre comme il appartenoit a filz de roy Fueillet	xii
	¶ Comment la royne helaine alloit fane chascun iour	

<sup>1</sup> Lines 215, 220

son dueil au lieu ou son seigneur mourut | et de la  
alloit au lac ou elle perdit son filz Fueillet xv

¶ Comment le bon Religieux qui auoit dit nouuelles  
a la royne helaine de son filz lancelet, print conge de  
elle, et sen vint au roy artus en la grant bretagne  
Fueillet xvi

¶ Comment la dame du lac enuoya sa damoyselle a  
la court du roy claudas, pour deliurer les deux enfans  
au roy boort que claudas tenoit en prison Fueillet xvii

The lady of the  
lake seeks to de-  
liver the sons of  
king Boort

¶ Comment farien, seneschal du roy claudas par le  
commandement de son seigneur, alla querir en prison  
les deux filz au roy de Gauues Fueillet xviii

¶ Comment les deux enfans au roy de gauues  
blecerent le roy claudas, & occirent dorn son filz | et  
comment la damoyselle du lac les emmena en semblance  
de deux leuriers fueil xix

Lyonnell and  
Boort wound  
king Claudas  
and slay his son  
Dorn

¶ De la grant ioye et du grant honneur que la dame  
du lac fist aux deux enfans quant elle les veit en sa  
maison Fueillet xx

¶ Comment le roy claudas mena tres grant dueil  
pour la mort de dorn son filz que boort auoit occis  
Fueillet xx

Claudus bewails  
his son's death

¶ Comment farien et le peuple de la cyte de gauues  
semeurent contre le roy claudas a cause que il vouloit  
faire mourir les deux filz au roy boort de gauues  
Fueillet xxi

¶ Comment le roy claudas se partit de gauues | et  
comment ceulx dudit lieu le vouloient occire, se neust  
este farien le bon cheualier f xxiii

Farien saves  
Claudus life

¶ Comment le roy claudas se deffendit vaillamment  
contre ceulx de Gauues qui le vouloyent occire Fueil-  
let xxv

¶ Comment lyonnell et boort perdirent le boire et le  
manger pource quilz ne scauoyent nouuelles de leur  
maistres | lesquelz estoyent demourez avec le roy claudas  
| & comment la dame du lac enuoya vne sienne damoy-  
selle a gauues pour les amener Fueillet xxvii

¶ Comment, par le conseil des barons de gauues  
leonce & lambegues sen allerent avecques la damoyselle  
pour veoir leurs seigneurs lyonnalet boort Fueillet xxviii

Ieonce and Lam-  
begues go to seek  
Lyonnel and  
Boort

¶ Comment la dame du lac sen retourna apres ce  
quelle eut monstre a leonce et a lambegues les enfans du  
roy de gauues leurs seigneurs, et comment lesditz che-  
ualiers sen retournerent a gauues Fueillet xxx

¶ Comment le roy claudas retourna a gauues, pour  
soy venger de la honte qu'on luy auoit faicte, et pour la  
mort de son filz Fueil xxxi

Claudus medi-  
tates revenge

	¶ Comment l'ippointement fut entre le roy claudas et les barons, pu le moyen de furien et lambegues son nepueu fueillet	xxxiii
Death of Furien	¶ Comment furien   sa femme, et son nepueu lambegues son partiurent pour aller voir lyonnell et boort, qui estoient au lie   & comment furien mourut Fueillet	xxxv
The widow of king Boort sees her children and Lancelot in a vision and dies	¶ Comment les deux roynes menient vincte vie au monstrei roy il   et comment celle de graues voit ces deux enfans & lancelet en vusion   et comment elle trespassa de ce siecle Fueillet	xxxv
Arthur holds a tournament, and Banin, son of king Ban, is the victor	¶ Comment le roy artus assemble le iour de pasques tous ses barons, & tint grant court a karahes, et comment banin le filleul au Roy ban emporta le pris du behourdys celluy iour Fueillet	xxxvi
The lady of the lake sends Lancelot to Arthur to be knighted, and provides for him white armour	¶ Comment la dame du lac se pourpensa de mener lancelet au roy artus pour le faire cheualier, <sup>1</sup> et elle luy builla armes blanches, et partit du lie a tout quarante cheualliers pour le conuoyer Fueillet	xxxvii
Of the wounded knight who came to Arthur's court	¶ Comment vng cheualier nauue, lequel auoit vne espee sichee en la teste et deux troncons de lance parmy le corps, <sup>2</sup> vint a la court du roy artus   et comment la dame du lac le mena deuant le roy artus, et luy prya quil le fist cheualier Fueillet	xxxix
Lancelot is knighted.	¶ Comment messire yvain, a qui le roy Artus auoit recommande lancelet, alla faire sa requeste audit roy artus, que le lendemain il fist ledit lancelet cheualier, et comment ledit lancelet defferra le cheualier naure <sup>3</sup> Fueillet	xl
How the white knight defended the lady of No-halt,	¶ Comment la dame de noehault <sup>4</sup> enuoya deuers le roy artus, luy supplier quil luy enuoyast secours contre le Roy de norhombellande qui luy menoit guerre Et comment Lancelot request au roy artus quil luy donnast congie dy aller   & il luy octroya Fueillet	xli
and won the battle for her	¶ Comment le nouveau cheualier aux armes blanches vainquit la bataille pour la dame de noehault Fueillet	xlii
How Lancelot conquered the Sorrowful Castle	¶ Comment lancelet apres ce quil se fut party de la dame de noehault, se combatit avec vng cheualier qui lauot mouille Fueillet	xlv.
How Arthur hears of it, and sends Gawain to see if it is true	¶ Comment lancelet conquist vaillamment par sa force et proesse le chastean de la douloureuse garde que nul aultre ne pouoit conquerre <sup>5</sup> Fueillet	xlv
	¶ Comment les nouuelles vindrent au roy artus que la douloureuse garde estoit conquise par la cheualier	

<sup>1</sup> Line 223<sup>2</sup> Lines 237 245<sup>3</sup> Lines 249 252<sup>4</sup> Line 255<sup>5</sup> Lines 257 259

aux armes blanches | Et le roy y enuoya messire gauvain  
pour en scaoir la verite Fueillet xlvi

¶ Comment messire Gauvain fut mys en prison | et  
comment le roy et la royne entrerent en la premiere  
porte de la | et la venent des tumbes ou il y auoit  
escript que monseigneur gauvain estoit mort, et plu-  
sieurs autres cheualiers Fueillet xlix

¶ Comment vne damoyse de l'hostel de la dame  
du lac feist assauoir au cheualier blanc que monseig-  
neur gauvain & ses compaignons estoient emprisonnez  
par celluy qui auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse  
garde Fueillet l

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier se combatit encontre  
celluy qui auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse garde,  
qui tenoit en prison messire gauvain et ses compaignons <sup>1</sup>  
Fueillet l

¶ Comment le cheualier blanc emmena le cheualier  
conquis en vng hermitage et comment ledit cheualier  
conquis luy rendit audit hermitage gauvain & ses com-  
paignons f lii

¶ Comment messire gauvain et ses compaignons sen-  
vindrent par deuers le roy artus qui estoit a la dou-  
loueuse garde Et comment le roy et la royne furent  
ioyeulx quant ilz les virent Fueillet liii

¶ Comment le cheualier blanc retourna a l'abbaye  
ou il auoit laisse ses escuyers | et comment il sceut las-  
semblee qui deuoit estre entre le roy artus et le roy  
doltre les marches, & comment il conquist le cheualier  
qui disoit mieulx aymer le cheualier qui auoit naure que  
celluy qui lauoit este <sup>2</sup> Fueillet liiii

¶ Comment messire gauvain se mist en queste pour  
trouuer le blanc cheualier <sup>3</sup> Et comment la meslee  
dentre les gens au roy des cent cheualiers et les gens de  
la dame de noehault fut appaisee Fueillet lv

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier vainquit lassemblee  
dentre les deux roys | et comment il fut naure du roy  
des cent cheualiers Fueillet lvi

¶ Comment apres que le cheualier qui auoit gangne  
le tournoyement dentre le roy doltre les marches sen-  
fut alle, le roy artus & la royne geneure se partirent  
pour aller en leurs pays Fueillet lvii

¶ Comment messire gauvain se combatit a brehai-  
sans pitie, et le rua par terre et comment apres ilz sen-  
allerent a la douloureuse garde & comment les deux  
pucelles que messire Gauvain menoit luy furent tollues  
Fueillet lviii

<sup>1</sup> Lines 263, 4

<sup>2</sup> See II 244, 5

<sup>3</sup> Line 267

Gawain is imprisoned, and supposed to be dead

Lancelot hears of Gawain's imprisonment

and delivers him and his companions

Gawain returns to Arthur and his Queen at Doloureuse Garde

Lancelot hears of the war to come between Arthur and Gahot

Gawain goes to seek the white knight

who is wounded in the battle against Gahot by the king of a hundred knights

Arthur and Queen Geneure return home

Lancelot ends the adventures of the 'horrible' Castle	¶ Comment lancelot print congie de son mie   et comment il mist a fin les adventures de la douloureuse garde Fueillet lx
Lancelot is again victorious in the combat between Arthur and Gaiot	¶ Comment messire gauvain recouura les deux pucelles qui luy auoyent este tollues, Et comment lancelot vainquit la seconde assemblee dentie le roy artus & le roy doultre les marches Fueillet lxi
Gauvain returns to Arthur's court	¶ Comment messire gauvain retourna a la court du roy artus apres la seconde assemblee dentie le roy artus & le roy doultre les marches, et comment lancelot vainquit le cheualier qui gardoit le gue Fueillet lxii [Here begins the Scotch Translation]
Arthur's evil dreams	¶ Comment le roy Artus songea plusieurs songes   et apres manda tous les sages clerks de son royaume pour en scauoir la signification <sup>1</sup> Fueillet lxiii
Gaiot defies Arthur	¶ Comment le roy doultre les marches, nomme gallehault, enuoya deffier le roy artus <sup>2</sup>   et comment Lancelot occist deux geans empires kamalot <sup>3</sup> Fueillet lxv
Lancelot is assailed by forty knights, and imprisoned by the lady of Melyhault	¶ Comment lancelot occist vng cheualier qui disoit moins aymer le cheualier nuire que celluy qui lauot naure <sup>4</sup>   et comment il fut assully de xl cheualliers, et mys en prison de la dame de mallehault <sup>5</sup> Fueillet lxviii
Lancelot released from prison is again victorious against Gaiot	¶ Comment gallehault assemble au roy artus vng iour d'uant que lancelot estoit en prison <sup>6</sup>   et comment le lendemain lancelot fut deliure de prison <sup>7</sup>   et vainquit lassemblee dentre les deux roys <sup>8</sup> Fueillet lxvii
Arthur is reproved by Amytes and Gaiot proposes a truce for a year	¶ Comment le roy artus fut repains de ses vices, et moult bien conseille par vng cheualier qui suruint en son ost <sup>9</sup>   Et comment gallehault donna tresues au roy Artus iusques a vng an <sup>10</sup> Fueillet lxi
Lancelot returns to the lady of Melyhault	¶ Comment lancelot, apres ce quil eut vaincu lassemblee, retourna en la prison de la dame de mallehault <sup>11</sup>   et comment elle le congneut, a son cheual et par les playes quil auoit, que cestoit celluy qui auoit vaincu lassemblee <sup>12</sup> Fueillet lxxii
Gauvain with 99 comrades departs to seek the red knight	¶ Comment messire gauvain, soy quarantiesme de compaignons, se mist en queste pour trouuer le cheualier qui auoit porte lescu vermeil a lassemblee dentre le roy artus et Gallehault <sup>13</sup> Fueillet lxxiii
The lady of Melyhault accepts Lancelot's ransom	¶ Comment la dame de mallehault mist a rancon le cheualier quelle tenoit en prison, et le laissa aller quant elle vit quelle ne peult scauoir son nom <sup>14</sup> fu lxxiiii

<sup>1</sup> Lines 363-527

<sup>2</sup> Lines 540-592

<sup>3</sup> Line 280

<sup>4</sup> Lines 233-252

<sup>5</sup> Lines 281-292

<sup>6</sup> Lines 634-694

<sup>7</sup> Lines 895-974

<sup>8</sup> Lines 975-1138

<sup>9</sup> Lines 1275-2180

<sup>10</sup> Lines 1543-1584

<sup>11</sup> Lines 1139-1152

<sup>12</sup> Lines 1181-1274

<sup>13</sup> Lines 2161-2256

<sup>14</sup> Lines 2347-2442

¶ Comment messire gauvain et ses compaignons retournerent de leur queste<sup>1</sup> | et comment apres les treues failles galehault vint assembler contre le roy artus, & tous ses gens en furent moult troublez<sup>2</sup> fu lxxxiii

The truce ended  
Gaiot again at-  
tacks Arthur

¶ Comment galehault suyuit le cheualier aux noires armes,<sup>3</sup> & fist tant par belles parolles quil lemmena en son ost, dont le roy artus et tous ses gens en furent moult troublez Fuallet lxxxviii

Gaiot gains over  
the black knig<sup>t</sup>

¶ Comment lancelet par sa prouesse conquist tout, et fist tant que galehault crya mercy au roy artus fu lxxxix

Lancelot induces  
Gaiot to submit  
to Arthur

¶ Comment galehault fist tant que la royne vit lance-  
lot | & comment ilz se arraisonnerent ensemble fu lxxxix

The Queen and  
Lancelot meet

¶ Comment la royne congneut lancelet apres ce quil eut longuement parle a elle, & quil luy eut compte de ses aduentures & comment la premiere acointance fut faicte entre la royne & lancelet par le moyen de galehault fu lxxxix

The Queen knows  
Lancelot from his  
adventures that  
he tells her

¶ Comment la premiere acointance fut faicte de galehault & de la dame de malehault par le moyen de la royne de logres, & comme[nt] lancelet & galehault sen alloient esbatre & deuiser avecques leurs dames fu lxxxiii

Gaiot becomes  
acquainted with  
the lady of Meli  
halt

II The Chapter of the French romance from which the translator has taken the beginning of his First Book is here given, in order to shew in what manner he has treated his original It begins at Fol lxiii a, col 1

Comment le roy artus songea plusieurs songes, et apres manda tous les sages clerz de son royaume pour en scaoir la signifiante

Arthur's evil  
dreams

**O**R dit le compte que le roy artus auoit longuement seourne a cardueil Et pource ny auenoit mie grandement de aduentures, il ennuya moult aux compaignons du Roy de ce quilz auoient si longuement seourne, & ne veoient riens de ce quilz souloyent veoir Principalement keu le seneschal en fut trop ennuye Et en parloit moult souuent, et disoyt deuant le roy que trop estoit ce seour ennuyeulx, & trop auoit dure Le roy luy demande "Keu | que voudriez vous que nous feissions?" "Certes," fait keu, "ie conselleroye que nous allissions a kamalot | car la cite est plus aduan-

King Arthur be-  
ing at Cardueil,

his knights are  
annoyed at meet-  
ing with no ad-  
ventures

Sir Kay counsels  
that they should  
go to Camelot

<sup>1</sup> Lines 2504 2530

<sup>2</sup> Lines 2531 3268

<sup>3</sup> Lines 3343 3487

The king con-  
sents to go,

but the same  
night dreams  
that all his hair  
falls off which  
delays him  
The third night  
after he dreams  
that all his fin-  
gers fall off ex-  
cept his thumbs

Again that all  
his toes fall off  
except his great  
toes

The Queen and  
his chaplain dis-  
regard the  
dreams

but Arthur sends  
for his bishops,  
archbishops, and  
their wisest  
clerks,

whom he impri-  
sons till they  
shall tell him  
what the dreams  
mean

After trying for  
nine days, they  
fail

They twice ob-  
tain a delay of  
three days

The king threat-  
ens to slay them

Five are to be  
burnt and five  
hung

tureuse que vous ayez | et la nous verrons souuent et  
orrons choses de merueilles que nous ne voyons pas icy  
Nous auons sejourne icy plus de deux moys, et  
oncques ne y veismes gueres de choses aduenir " Or  
alons donc," fait le roy, " a Kamalot, puis que vous le  
conseillez " Lendemain deust partir le roy | mais la  
nuyet luy aduint vne merueilleuse aduenture Il songa  
que tous les cheueulx de sa teste cheoient, et tous les  
poilz de sa barbe, dont il fut moult espouente Et par  
ce demoura encoires en la ville La tierce nuyt apres il  
songa que il luy estoit aduis que tous les dois luy  
cheoient fors les poulces, & lois fut plus esbahy que  
deuant

A Lautre nuyet songer il que tous les ortelz des  
piedz luy cheoient fors les poulces de ce fut si  
trouble que plus ne pult " Sire," fait son chappelain  
a qui il lauoir dit, " ne vous chulle | car songes ne sont  
pas a cronc," le roy le dit a la royne, et elle respond  
tout ainsi que luy uoir fut son chappelain " En  
verite," dist il, " ie ne lai-sei y pas la chose ainsi " | il  
fait mander ses euesques et archeuesques quilz soient a  
luy au ix iour ensuyuant a kamalot, & quilz amainent  
auec eulx tous les plus sages clerks quilz pourroient  
auoir et trouuer A tant se prit de carlucl & sen va  
par les chasteaulx et par les citez | tant que au neuf  
mesme iour est venu a kamalot, et aussi sont venus les  
clercz du pays Il leur demande conseil de son songe,  
et ilz elisent dix des plus sages le roy les fist bien  
enserrer, et dist que iamaiz nen sortiroient de prison  
deuant quilz luy auroient dit la signifiante de son songe  
Ilz espiouuerent la force de leur sciencce par neuf iours,  
et puis vindrent au roy, & dirent quilz nauoient riens  
trouue " Ainsi maist dieu," dit le roy, " ia ainsi  
neschapperez " Et ils demandent respit iusques au  
troisiesme iour ensuyuant, et il leur donne Les iii  
iours passez, ilz reuenient deuant le roy, et dient que  
ilz ne peuent riens trouuer | et demandent encoires autre  
delay | et ilz ont Et de rechief vindient pour de-  
mander aultres troys iours de dilacion, ainsi que le roy  
auoir songe de tierce nuyt en tierce nuyt " Oi sachez,"  
fait le roy, " que iamaiz plus nen aurez " Quant vint  
au tiers iour ilz dirent quilz nauoient rien trouue, " ce  
ne vault rien," fait le roy, " ie vous feray tous destruire  
se vous ne me dictes la vente," et ils dirent " Sue  
nous ne vous en scarions que dire " Lors se pense le  
roy quil leur fera paour de mort Il fait fair vng grant  
feu, & commanda en leurs presences que les v y fus-

sent mis, et que les autres cinq soyent penduz | mais  
 prueement deffent a ses baillifz quilz ne les menassent  
 que iusques a la paour de mourir. Quant les cinq qui  
 furent menez aux fourches eurent les cordes entour  
 leurs colz, ils eurent paour de mourir, et dirent, que se  
 les autres cinq le vouloyent dire, ilz le diroyent. La  
 nouvelle vint au v que len menoit ardre | et ilz dirent  
 que, se les autres le vouloyent dire, ils le diroyent | ils  
 furent amenez ensemble deuant le roy, et les plus sages  
 dirent | "sire, nous vous dirons ce que nous auons  
 trouue | mais nous ne voudrions mie que vous nous  
 tenissiez a menteurs se il ne aduenoit | car nous voud  
 rions bien quil nen fust rien, et voulons, comment quil  
 en aduengne, que vous nous assurez que la mal ne  
 nous en aduendra," et il leur promet. Lors dist lung  
 de eulx qui pour tous parla "Sire, sachez que ceste  
 terre et tout honneur vous conuendra perdre et ceulx  
 en qui plus vous fiez vous fauldront, telle est la sub  
 stance et signifiante de voz songes" De ceste chose fut  
 le roy moult effraye, "Or me dictes," fait il, "sil est  
 chose qui men peult garantir" "Certes," fait le  
 maistre, nous auons veu une chose | Mais cest si grande  
 merueille que on ne le pourroyt penser, et ne la vous  
 osons dire" "Dictes," fait il, "seurement | car pis ne  
 me puez vous dire que vous mauuez dit" "Sire, riens  
 ne vous peult garder de perdre tout honneur terrien fors  
 le lyon sauluaige, et le mire sans medecine, par le con  
 seil de la fleur, & se nous semble estre si grande folie  
 que nous ne losions dire | Car lyon sauluaige ne y peult  
 estre, ne mire sans medecine | ne fleur qui parlast" le  
 roy est moult entrepris de ceste chose mais plus en  
 fait belle chiere que le cuer ne luy apporte. Ung iour  
 alla le roy chasser au boys bien matin | et mena avec  
 luy messire gauvain, keu le seneschal, et ceulx qui lui  
 pleust. Si laisse icy le compte a parler de luy, et  
 retourne a parler du cheualier dont messire Gauvain  
 aporta le nom en court

The five who are  
 to be hung, hav  
 ing the cords  
 round theu necks  
 offer to speak out

They stipulate  
 not to be held as  
 liars if their inter  
 pretations fail

The dreams mean  
 that he will lose  
 his land and his  
 honou

Arthur as if  
 anything can  
 avert such fate

He is told, "no  
 thing except the  
 savage lion and  
 the leech without  
 medicine by help  
 of the counsel of  
 the flower

Arthur goes to  
 the chase

Lancelot on his  
 wanderings

**Q**uant<sup>1</sup> le cheualier qui lassemblee auoyt vaincu  
 se partast de la ou il se combatist a son hoste,  
 il erra toute iour sans autre aduanture trouuer. Il se  
 logea la nuyt chiez une veufue dame a lyssue dune  
 forest a cinq lieues angleches pres de karnelot. Le  
 cheualier se leua matin, et erra, luy et ses escuyers et sa  
 damoyelle, tant quil encontra vng escuyer "Varlet,"  
 fait il, "scez tu nulles nouuelles?" "Ouy," fait il,

He meets an  
 esquire,

and asks him  
 'what news?

<sup>1</sup> There is no trace of the rest of this chapter in the Scot  
 tish poem



' The queen,  
 he says "is at  
 Camelot  
 Lancelot goes on  
 till he sees a lady,  
 house a lady and  
 her damsel  
 He regards her  
 fixedly  
 An armed knight,  
 passing asks him  
 what he is regard-  
 ing so closely  
 He replies that  
 he looks at what  
 pleases him  
 The knight asks  
 if he knows who  
 the lady is,  
 and he replies  
 that he knows it  
 is the queen  
 The stranger  
 takes Lancelot  
 home to lodge  
 with him,  
 and he is well  
 entertained  
 "ma dame la royne est icy pres a kamalot" "quelle  
 royne" fait il "Le femme au roy artus," fut l'escuyer  
 Le cheulher sen part, et cheuanche tant quil treuve  
 vne maison forte, et voit vne dame en son suicot, qui  
 regardoit les piez et la foiest | & auoit avec elle vne  
 damoiselle Le cheulher se arieste, et regarde la dame  
 moult longuement tant quil oublie tout autre chose  
 Et maintenant passa vng cheualier arme de toutes  
 armes, qui luy dist "Sue cheualier, que attendez  
 vous?" et celluy ne respond mot | car il ne la pas ouy  
 Et le cheualier le boutte, et luy demande quil regarde  
 "Je regarde," fait il, "ce que me plust Et vous nestes  
 mie courtois, qui de mon penser me auez iecte" "Par  
 la foy que vous duez o dieu," fait le cheualier estrange,  
 scauez vous bien qui la dame est que vous regardez?"  
 "Je le cuyde bien scouir," fut le bon cheualier "Et  
 qui este elle," fait lautre "C'est ma dame la royne"  
 "Si maist dieu, estiangement la congnoissez, deables  
 vous font bien regarder d'uncs" "Pourquoy," faict il  
 "Pourcee que vous ne me oseriez suir par deuant la  
 Royne la ou ie yroye" "Certes," iuct le bon cheual-  
 lier, "se vous osiez aller la ou ie vous oseroy suir,  
 vous auez passer de courage tous les plus grans oseurs  
 qui oncques furent" A tant sen part le cheualier Et  
 le bon cheualier va apres Et quant ilz ont vne piece  
 alle, lautre luy dist, "vous he[r]bergerez ennuyt avec  
 moy, et le matin ie vous meneray la ou ie vous diz," et  
 le bon cheualier luy demande sil conuient ainsi faire  
 "Oy" | fait il Et il dist que donc lottroyera il Il  
 geut la nuyt chez le cheualier sur la ruiere de kamalot,  
 et fut moult bien herberge, et sa pucelle | et ses escuyers

III Our last extract will shew exactly where the Scottish  
 poem suddenly ceases, and how the story was probably con-  
 tinued For the latter purpose, four chapters of the French  
 Romance are added beyond the point where the Scotch ends,  
 and it is possible (judging from lines 306-312 of the Pro-  
 logue) that the author did not intend to go very much further  
 The passage begins, in the French copy, at Fol lxxvii b, col  
 1, and, in the Scotch poem, at l 3427

Lors descent de son cheual, et la baille au cheualier  
 Et celluy si y monte sans arrest Et gallehault monta  
 sur vng autre, et vient a son conroy | Si prent avec  
 Galiot gives  
 Lancelot his own  
 horse

soy les dix mille, et dit quilz voient assembler deuant,  
 "et vous," fait il au roy vend, "viendres apres, si ne  
 assemblez mie si tost comme ceulx cy seront assem- and gives orders  
 blez | mais quant les derrains de ceulx de dela seront to his own men  
 venus, vous assemblerez, & moy mesmes vous iray  
 querir" A tant amaine les dix mille pour assembler,<sup>1</sup>  
 Et quant il fut entre en la bataille il fist sonner ses  
 busines tant *que* tout en retentissoit<sup>2</sup> Quant le noir He commands  
 cheualier les ouyt venu, si luy sembla que grant effort the trumpets to  
 de gens eut la, si se retrait vng pou vers les siens, et les be sounded  
 appella entour luy, & leur dist "Seigneurs, vous estes  
 tous amys du roy Or y peria comment vous le ferez"<sup>3</sup> Lancelot ha  
 Et messire yuain, qui les vit venir, dist a ses gens, rangues his men  
 "Or soves tous asseurs *que* nous ne perdrons au iourd-  
 huy par force de gens"<sup>4</sup> Et ce disoit il pource quil  
 cuidoit *que* les gens gallehault fussent tous venus<sup>5</sup> Sir Yvain com  
 forts Arthur s  
 soldiers

Quant les x m de gallehault sassemblerent, si  
 fut grande la noise, et moult en abbatent a  
 leur venir | mais quant messire yuain vint, si reconforta  
 moult les gens du roy artus | et tous les fuyans re  
 tournent avec luy Et gallehault sen va arriere a son Galhot orders  
 conroy, et commande quilz cheuauchent fermement | et charge  
 quilz se frappent es gens du roy artus<sup>6</sup> de telle maniere<sup>7</sup>  
 que nul dentreulz ne demeure a cheual "Vous estes  
 tous frays Or y perra comment vous le ferez" A  
 tant cheuauchent les conroys deuers leurs gens, Car ilz  
 auoyent ia du pire Et quant le conroy de Gallehault  
 fut venu, si changa moult laffaire | Car moult y auoyt Galhot s reserue  
 grant effort de gens Et fut a leur venue le cheualier arriving his men  
 awhile prevail  
 noir mis a terre<sup>8</sup> Et aussi les six compaignons qui  
 toute iour auoyent este pres de luy<sup>9</sup> Lors vint galle-  
 hault, qui le remonta sur le cheual mesmes ou son corps  
 seoit<sup>10</sup> Et si tost comme il fut monte, il sen reunt a la  
 meslee aussi frays comme il auoit le iour este Et  
 quant il vint aux coups donner, tous ceulx qui le veoyent  
 sen esmeruelloyent, Ainsi dura la bataille rusques a la  
 nuyt Et quant il vint au soir ilz se departient | et  
 toutesfoys les gens du roy Artus en eurent du meilleur  
 Le bon cheualier se departit de lost le plus coyement  
 quil peut,<sup>11</sup> et sen alla pai vng chemin entre les prestz  
 et vng tertre, et cuyda que nul ne le veist | mais Galle-  
 Lancelot tries to  
 depart unob  
 served

<sup>1</sup> Line 3432<sup>2</sup> Lines 3435 3440<sup>3</sup> Lines 3441 3476<sup>4</sup> Lines 3477 3480<sup>5</sup> Lines 3481 3484<sup>6</sup> Lines 3485, 6<sup>7</sup> Line 3487 and last<sup>8</sup> Compare lines 3365 3368<sup>9</sup> Lines 3369, 70<sup>10</sup> Compare lines 3391 3426<sup>11</sup> Compare line 1140

but is followed  
by Galiot,

who plays him  
to lodge with him  
for that night

Lancelot at first  
refuses till Galiot  
agrees to do what-  
ever Lancelot  
may require of  
him,

and promises to  
entertain him  
sumptuously,  
whereupon they  
return together  
to Galiot's camp

Gauvain seeing  
Lancelot with  
Galiot,

tells the Queen  
that now they  
are all lost

and swoons away  
more than three  
times

hault sen print ties bien gude, et piequa tant son  
cheual qui luy fut au dauint par vne adresse, et le vint  
rencontrer au pied du tuitie Si le salue, et dit "que  
dieu le conduit" Et celui le regarde en trauers, et luy  
a a moult grant peine rendu son salut "Bel amy,"  
fait gallehault, "qui estes vous?" "Sire," fait il, "ie  
suis vng cheualier, ce pouz vous veou" "Ciertes," fait  
gallehault, "cheualier estes vous meilleur qui soit | &  
vous estes l'homme du monde que plus ie vouldroye  
honnourer,<sup>1</sup> et si vous suis venu prier que vous herbergez  
ceste nyut avec moy" Et il luy dist ainsi comme sil  
ne lauoit huy veu, "Qui estes vous, sire, qui me auez  
prie de me he[re]berger?" "Je suis gallehault, le sire  
de ces gens icy, vers qui vous iuez au ioudhuy garanty  
le royaume de lognes, lequel ie eusse ia conquis se ne  
fust vostre corps" "Comment" (fait il) "vous estes  
ennemy de monseigneur le roy artus, et me priez de  
herberger? | Avec vous ne hebergeray ie mie en ce  
point" "Haa sire," fait gallehault, "plus fery ie  
pour vous, et si nay mye a commencer Et ie vous  
prie que vous y hebergez par tel conuenant que ie  
feray tout ce que me scaurez requier" A tant se  
arresta le cheualier, et dist a gallehault, "Sire, vous  
promettez assez | mais ie ne scay comment il est du  
rendre" | et gallehault luy dist "Sire, se vous he[r]-  
bergez ennuyt avec moy, ie vous donneray tout ce que  
vous oserez diuier de bouche, et bien vous en feray  
seur," Et lors luy fiance, & apres luy promet bailler  
bons plaiges, Adonc sen vont tous deux en lost

¶ Comment gallehault suyuit le cheualier aux  
noires armes, et fist tant par belles parolles quil  
lemmena en son ost, donc le roy artus & tous  
ses gens en furent moult troublez.

**M**Essire gauvain auoyt veu aller le cheualier au  
noir escu, & le eust volentiers suyuy sil eust  
peu monter a cheual Lors regarde contre val la riuere,  
et voit gallehault et le cheualier noir qui retournoyent  
pour venir a lost, et dist a la royne, "Haa dame, or  
pouons nous bien dire que nous sommes gens perdus |  
regardez que gallehault a conquis par scauoir," Et elle  
regarde, & voyt que cest le cheualier noir que gallehault  
emmaine, si en est tant iree quelle ne peut dire mot  
Et messire gauvain se pasme en pou dheure plus de  
trois fois Le roy artus vint leans | et ouyt le cry que  
chascun disoit, "il est mort, il est mort" Si vint a  
luy, et le brassa, et commença a plorer moult tendre-

<sup>1</sup> Compare lines 2845 8

ment Et reuent monseigneur Gauvain de pasmoison ,  
Et quant il veit le roy artus, il commence a le blasmer,  
et dit " Ores est venu le terme que les clerz vous  
disrent Regardez le tresor que vous auez huy perdu  
celluy vous toldra terre qui toute iour la vous a garantie  
par son corps, et se vous fussiez preudhomme vous  
leussiez retenu, ainsi comme a fait le plus preudhomme  
qui viue, qui par cy deuant lemmaine " Lors voit le  
roy gallehault, qui emmenoit le cheualhier, dont il a tel  
dueil que a pou quil ne est cheut | mais de plorer ne se  
peut tenir, et toutesfois faict il la plus belle chere *quil*  
peut pour son nepueu reconforter Et si tost *que* il vit  
en la salle, il fist grant dueil | aussi fist chascun preud-  
homme

He tells Arthur  
that his time of  
misfortune is  
come,

for their pro-  
tector is lost

Arthur also sees  
Gahot and is  
deeply grieved  
but tries to com-  
fort his nephew

**T**Ant sont allez gallehault et le cheualier quilz  
sont venus empres lost, Adonc luy dist le  
cheualier, " Sire, ains que ie entre dedans vostre ost,  
faictes moi parler aux deux plus preudhommes que vous  
ayez et esquelz vous fiez le plus " Et gallehault lot-  
troye Lors sen va en son tref, et prent deux des  
hommes du monde ou plus il se fie, et leur dist, " Venez  
auec moy et vous verrez le plus riche homme du  
monde " " Comment," font ilz, " nestes vous mie le  
plus riche qui soit au monde ? " " Nenny," dist il |  
" mais ie le seray ains que ie dorme " Ces deux estoient  
le roy premier conquis | et le roi des cent cheualhers  
Quant ilz virent le cheualhier, si lui firent moult grant  
ioye | Car ilz le congneurent bien par ses armes Et le  
cheualhier leur demanda qui ilz estoient | et ilz se nom-  
merent sicomme vous auez ouy | et il leur dist  
" Seigneurs, vostre sire vous faict moult grant honneur |  
Car il dit que vous estes les deux hommes du monde  
que plus il ayme, et entre luy et moy a vne conuenance  
que ie vueil que vous oyez | Car il ma fiance que pour  
en nuyt herberger auec luy me donnera ce que ie luy  
voudray demander " Et gallehault dist | " vous dictes  
verite " " Sire," faict le cheualhier, " ie vueil encores  
auoir la seurte de ses hommes " Et gallehault dist,  
" Dictes moy comment " " Ilz me fianceront," fait le  
cheualhier, " *que* se vous me faillez de conuenant, ilz  
vous guerpront et sen viendront auec moy la ou ie  
diray," Et gallehault dit que ainsi le veult | et il le fait  
fiancer Lois appella gallehault le roy premier conquis  
a vne part, et luy dist " Allez auant & dictes a mes  
barons quilz assemblent maintenant a monstre si hon-  
norablement comme ilz pourront, et gardez que en mon  
tref soient tous les deduys que len pourra trouuer en

Gahot and Lance-  
lot arrive at Ga-  
hlot's camp

and Lancelot  
asks to speak  
with the two men  
whom Gahot  
most trusts

Gahot takes him  
to the ' first-con-  
quest king and  
the king of a hun-  
dred knights, and

Lancelot repeats  
to them his com-  
pact with Gahot,

and takes their  
pledge that they  
will forsake  
Gahot if he  
breaks his agree-  
ment and will go  
with himself  
(Lancelot)

Gallot ordeis all  
kinds of enter-  
tunments to be  
brought to his  
tent

Twenty eight  
kings beside  
dukes and counts  
come to the feast  
and honour Lan-  
celot as the flower  
of the knight-  
hood of the world

Lancelot is richly  
attired and nobly  
served

After supper four  
beds are pre-  
pared, one larger  
than the rest, for  
Lancelot

Gallot awhile de-  
parts and Lance-  
lot falls asleep

Gallot then re-  
turns, and lies  
near Lancelot,

and hears how  
his guest mur-  
murs in his sleep

Next day they go  
to hear mass,

and Lancelot  
then demands his  
arms wishing to  
depart

tout lost" Loïs sen va celluy au ferrir des esperons, & fist le commandement de son seigneur Et gallehault tient le cheualier aux parolles, luy & son seneschal, tant que le commandement fust fait Si ne demoura gueres que encontre eulx vindrent deux cens barons qui tous estoient hommes de gallehault, xxviii roys, et les autres estoient ducz et contes, la fut le cheualier telle ment honnoure que oncques si grant feste ne fut pour vng homme mescongneu comme len fit pour luy a celle fois | et disoient grans & petis, "Bien viengnez, la fleur de la cheualerie du monde" | et il en auoit grant honte Ainsi vindrent iusques au tref de gallehault, si ne pourroient estre comtez les deduys et les instrumens qui leans estoient A telle ioie fut receu, et quant il fut desarme, gallehault luy fit apporter vne robe moult riche, et il la vestit quant le manger fut prest, ilz se assirent a table, et furent noblement seruis, et le cheualier fut moult honnoure

**A** Pres manger commanda gallehault a faire quatre litz desquelz lung estoit plus grant que les autres Quant les litz furent si richement atournez, gallehault maine le cheualier coucher Et dist "Sire, vous gerrez icy," "Et qui gerra de la?" fait le cheualier "Quatre sergens," faict gallehault, "qui vous serviront | Et ie rray en vne chambre par dela, afin que vous soiez icy plus en paix" "Haa, Sire, pour dieu," faict il, "ne me faictes gesir plus ayse que ces autres cheualiers | car tant ne me deuez a vilennir" "Nayez garde," faict gallehault, "Car ia pour chose que vous faciez pour moi vous ne serez tenu a villain" A tant sen part gallehault Et le cheualier commence a penser au grant honneur que gallehault luy faisoit Si lenprise moult | puis se coucha, et tantost il sendormit | car moult estoit las, Et quant gallehault sceut quil fut endormy, le plus coyement quil peut se coucha en vng autre lit empres luy | et es deux autres litz se coucherent deux cheualiers, et nestoyent en la chambre que eulx quatre, sans plus La nuyt se plaint moult le cheualier en son dormant, et gallehault loit bien, car il ne dormoit gueres Ains pensa toute la nuyt a le retenir Lendemain le cheualier se leua et alla ouyr messe, et ia estoit gallehault leue | car il ne voulut mie que le cheualier laperceust Quant ilz vindrent du monstier, le cheualier demanda ses armes, & gallehault demande pourquoy Et il dist quil sen vouloit aller Et gallehault luy dist "Beau doulx amy, demourez | et ne cuydez mye que ie vous vueille deceuoir Car vous

noserez ia mens demander que vous n'ayez Et sachez  
 que vous pourriez bien auoir compaignie de plus riche  
 homme que ie suis | mais vous ne laurez iamaiz a  
 homme qui plus vous ayme "Sire," faict le cheual-  
 lier, "ie demoureray donc puis quil vous plaist Car  
 meilleure compaignie que la vostre ne pourroye ie mye  
 auoir | Mais ie vous diray presentement le don pour-  
 quoy ie demoureray avec vous | et se ie ne lay, ie ny  
 demoureray ia "Sire," fait gallehault, "dictes seure-  
 ment et vous laurez, se cest chose que ie puisse accom-  
 plir," Et le cheualier appella ses deux plaigus et dist  
 deuant eulx, "Je vous demande," fait il, "que si tost  
 que vous serez au dessus du roy artus, que vous luy  
 aliez crier mercy si tost comme ie vous en semondray"  
 Quant gallehault lentent, si en est tout esbahy, et com-  
 mence a penser Et les deux roys luy dirent "A  
 quoy pensez vous icy endroit, de penser n'avez mestier |  
 car vous auez tant couru que vous ne pouez retourner"  
 "Comment," faict Gallehault, "cuydez vous que ie me  
 vueille repentir | se tout le monde estoit mien si luy  
 oseroye ie bien donner mais ie pensoye a vng seul mot  
 quil a dit | mais ia dieu ne maist," dist il, "se vous  
 n'avez le don | car ie ne pourroye mens faire pour vous  
 ou ie peusse auoir honte Mais ie vous pryé que ne me  
 tollez vostre compaignie pour la donner a altruy," et  
 le cheualier luy creanca Ainsi demoura | et ilz se  
 asserent au manger qui estoit appreste Si font moult  
 grant ioye par tout lost du cheualier qui est demoure  
 Ainsi passerent celle nuyt Lendemain gallehault et  
 son compaignon allerent ouyr messe, et gallehault luy  
 deist | "Sire, il est huy iour dassembler, vouldrez vous  
 armes porter?" "Ouy," dist il "donc porterez vous  
 les miennes," fait gallehault, "pour le commencement"  
 Et il dist quil les porteroit vouldentiers | "mais vous ne  
 porterez armes," feist il a gallehault, "si non comme  
 mon sergent?" "Non," dist il Lors firent apporter  
 les armes, & armerent le cheualier du fort haultbert, &  
 des chausses qui trop estoient longues & lees, Lors se  
 armerent les gens de gallehault et pareillement les gens  
 du roy Artus, & passerent les lices de telz y eut Tute-  
 ffoys le roy auoyt deffendu que nul ne les passast Si  
 y eut de bonnes ioustes en pou dheure | si se assembler-  
 ent tous les ostz deuant la lice, & commencerent a faire  
 armes Le roy artus estoit a son estandart, et auoit  
 commande que ilz menassent la roïne a sauliete se la  
 descomfiture tornoit sur eulx | quant tous les ostz  
 furent assemblez et le bon cheualier fust arme, si cuida

Gaihot induces  
him to stay

but again pro-  
mises to do for  
him whatever he  
asks

Lancelot then de-  
mands that Gaihot  
sh. il submit him-  
self to Arthur

Gaihot is con-  
founded and  
ponders but then  
grants Lancelot's  
request

Lancelot returns  
with him another  
night

Next day the  
hosts are again  
armed for battle

Lancelot is at first mistaken for Gahot but is recognized by Gawain

Arthur's men cannot stand against Lancelot

Lancelot calls upon Gahot to keep his com pact

Gahot rides forward and finds Arthur ready to kill himself for grief the Queen being escorted away by a guard of forty knights and Gawain wishing to die

How Lancelot makes Gahot cry mercy to Arthur

Gahot demands to see King Arthur,

and at sight of him dismounts and kneels to him,

chascun que ce fust gallehault, & disoient tous "Voicy gallehault, voicy gallehault" | messire gauvain le congneust bien & dist "Ce nest mye gallehault | ains est le cheualier aux armes noires, le meilleur cheualier du monde" | & si tost comme ilz furent assemblez, oncques ne se tant le roy Artus ne ses gens depuis que le cheualier y fut arrive | et trop se desconfortoyent du bon cheualier qui contre eulx estoit, si furent menez rusques a la lice car trop estoient grans gens avec gallehault au partir des lices ce tindrent vne piece et souffrirent longuement | mais le souffrit ny peut riens valoir Grant fut le meschief des gens au roy artus et dit le compte que le cheualier neust mie moins de peine de tenir les gens de gallehault que ilz ne passassent oultre la lice quil auoit de chasser les gens au roy Artus Et nompourtant moult les auoit supportez | & il les eut mis oultre a force sil eust voulu | mais il demoura emmy le pas pour les aultres detenir Lors regarda tout entour de luy, et commenca a hucher | "gallehault, gallehault" et gallehault vient grant alleure, et dist "bel amy, que voulez vous?" "quoy," faict il, "ie vueil que mon conuenant me tenez," "Par ma foy," fait gallehault, "ie suis tout prest de lacomplir puis quil vous plaist" Lors picque le cheual des esperons & vient rusques a lestandart ou le roy artus estoit, qui faisoit si tresgrant duel que a peu quil ne se occioit pource quil estoit desconfit Si estoit la la royne montee, et lemmenoient quarante cheualliers Et monseigneur gauvain, que on vouloit emporter en letiere | mais il dit quil aymeroit mieulx mourir en ce point que veoir toute cheualerie morte et honnye si se pasma tellement que len cuydoit bien que il mourust incontinent

¶ Comment lancelot par la prouesse conquis tout, et fist tant que galehault cria mercy au roy artus

**Q**uant le cheualier veit gallehault prest dacomplir son conuenant, il iura bien que oncques si loyal compaignon ne fut trouue Il en a telle pytie quil en souspire moult fort, & dit entre ses dens "Haa dieu, qui pourra ce desservir?" & gallehault cheuauche rusques a lestandart et demande le roy artus Il vient auant moult dolent & esmaye comme celluy qui tout honneur et toute roye terrienne cuyde auoir perdue, Et quant gallehault le voit, si luy dit "sire, roy artus, venez auant, & navez paour | car ie vueil a vous parler" et quant le roy louyt, il sesmerueille moult que ce peult estre, Et de si long comme galehault le voit venir, il descend de son cheual et se agenouille, et dit "Sue,

ie vous viens faire droit de ce que ie vous ay meffait , and submits him  
si men repens, et me metz en vostre mercy " self to him  
humbly

**Q**uant le roy lentend, il a merueilleusement grant Arthur over  
ioye, et lieue les mains vers le ciel, louant Dieu joyed praises  
God  
de ceste aduantage | et se le roy fait bonne chere, en-  
cores la faict meilleure Gallehault et il se lieue de  
genoulx, & sentiebaissent, en font moult grande chere  
lung a lautre lors dist Gallehault | "sire, faictes vostre  
plaisir de moy | car ie metz en vostre saisine mon corps  
pour en faire ce que il vous plaira Et sil vous plaist,  
ie yai retrans mes gens arriere, & puis reuendray a  
vous incontinent " "Allez doncques," fait le roy | "car  
ie vueil parler a vous " A tant sen part gallehault &  
reuent a ses gens | & les en faict aller Et le roy  
enuoya apres la royne, qui sen alloit faisant grand dueil  
et les messages cheuauchent tant que ilz lattaignent |  
et sont venus a elle, & luy comptent la ioye que aduenue  
leur est Et elle ne le peult croire tant quelle voy les  
enseignes que le roy luy enuoye tant coururent les  
nouuelles que monseigneur gauvain le sceut, lequel en  
eut grant ioye sur tous les aultres, et dist au roy  
"Sire, comment a ce este?" "Certes, ie ne scay," fait  
il "mais ie croy que telle a este le plaisir de nostre  
seigneur" moult est grande la ioye, & moult se esmer-  
ueille chascun comment ce peult estre aduenu Galle-  
hault dist a son compaignon "que voulez vous que ie  
face? iay fait vostre commandement, & le roy ma dit  
que ie retourne | mais ie vous conuoyeray auant iusques  
a voz tentes " "Haa sire," fait le cheualier, "aincoys  
vous irez au roy & luy porterez le plus grant honneur  
que vous pourrez Et tant auez fait pour moy que ie  
ne le pourroye desseruir | mais tant vous pryé, pour  
dieu | et pour lamour que vous auez a moy, que nul ne  
sache ou ie suis" | ainsi sen vont parlant iusques a leurs  
tentes chascun scait que la paix est faicte | mais  
plusieurs en sont dolens | car mieulx aymassent la  
guerre que la paix lois sont descenduz les deux  
compaignons, et si tost quilz furent desarmez, Galle-  
hault print vne de ses meilleures robbes pour aller a la  
court et feist cryer par tout son ost que chascun sen  
allast, fors tant seulement ceulx de son hostel Apres  
appella les deux roys, et leur baille son compaignon, &  
leur commande quilz facent autant de luy comme de  
son corps mesmes A tant monte Gallehault, et sen  
va a la court du roy artus Et le roy luy vint alen-  
contre, et la royne qui ia estoit retournee, & la dame de  
malehault avec plusieurs dames & damoyelles A tant

Gahot first ask-  
ing Arthur a  
leave dismisses  
his troops to their  
tents

The Queen and  
Sir Gawain re-  
joice greatly

Lancelot prays  
Gahot not to re-  
veal where he is,  
and they return  
to their tents.

Gahot commits  
his guest to the  
care of the two  
kings and de-  
parts to speak  
with Arthur



Arthur and Galot go together to the tower where Gawain lies ill

Gawain welcomes Galot

The Queen the King and Gawain rejoice at Galot's coming,

but he soon after departs to see Iancelot for a short time promising to return

Iancelot tells Galot to do whatever Arthur wishes

He charges Galot again not to ask his name but to tell him about Arthur

Galot praises the Queen

and Lancelot sheds tears

vont en la bretesche ou monseigneur gauvain gisoit malade et quant il sceut que gallehault venoit, il sefforce de belle chere faire, comme celluy qui oncques mes ne lauot veu de si pres lors luy dist | "bien soyez vous venu comme de celluy dont ie desiroye moult lacoitance | car vous estes lhomme du monde qui plus doibt estre prise & ayne a droit de toutes gens Et ie cuyde que nul ne scait si bien congnoistre preudhomme comme vous & bien y a paru" Ainsi parle messue gauvain a gallehault, & il luy demande comment il luy est | et Gauvain dist "Jay este pres de mort mais la grant amour qui est entre vous & le roy ma guery" Moult font grant ioie le roy artus & la royne & monseigneur gauvain de la venue de gallehault | et tout le iour ont parle de amour et dacoitance Mais du non cheualier ne tiennent ilz nulles parolles | ans passent le iour a resiouyr lung lautie tant quil vint au vespre Lors demande gallehault congie de ses gens aller veoir Et le roy le luy donne | "mais vous reuiendrez," fait il, "incointinent," et gallehault le luy octroye | si senreuient a son compaignon & luy demande comment il a lepus fait | et il luy respondit que bien, "Sire," fait gallehault, "comment feyay ie | le roy ma moult prie que ie retourne a luy, & il me feroit mal de vous laisser en ce point" "Haa, sire cheualier, pour dieu mercy, vous ferez ce que monseigneur le roy voudra car iamaiz a plus preudhomme que il est ne eustes acointance Mais ie vueil que vous me donnez vng don" Et gallehault luy dist "Demandez ce quil vous plaira | car ie ne vous escondroye iamaiz," "Sire," fait il, "ie vous remercyeray Vous me auez donne que vous ne me demanderez mon nom deuant que ie le vous diray" "Et ie men tiendray a tant puis que vous le voulez," dit gallehault "Et ne doubtez pas que ce eust esto la premiere chose que ie vous eusse demande, si men tairay a tant" Lors luy demanda de lacoitance du roy artus | mais il ne nomme mie la royne | et gallehault dit que "le roy est moult preudhomme, & moult me poyse que ie ne lay congneu pieca | Car moult en feusse amende | mais ma dame la royne est sy vaillante que oncques plus honneste dame ne vey" et quant le cheualier ouyt parler de la royne, si se embronche et commence a souspirer durement et gallehault le regarde et se esmerueille moult pource que les lames luy cheoyent des yeulx, si commence a parler daultre chose

Quant ilz ont longuement parle ensemble, le cheualier noir luy dist "Allez, si ferez a monseigneur

THE FRENCH CONTINUATION OF THE SCOTCH POEM

gneu le roy compaignie, et si escoutez sy vous oirez de moy nulles parolles, & vous me compterez demain ce que vous aurez ouy" "Voultentiers, sire," fust gallehault | lors le accolle, et dit aux roys "Je vous baille en garde cest homme comme le cucur de mon ventre" Ainsi sen va gallehault & le cheualier demcure en la garde de deux preu[d]hommes du pays de Gallehault | mais il ne fault mye demander sil fust honnore | car len faisoit assez plus pour luy quil neust voulu celle nuyt geurent les deux roys au tref gallehault pour lamour du cheualier & luy firent entendant quilz ny coucheroyent mye | & ilz le firent coucher ainsi que Gallehault auoit fait lautre nuyt Au commencement dormit le cheualier moult fort, et quant vint a mynuict si commença a soy tourner, et commença a faire vng duel si grant que tous ceulz qui entour luy estoient sen esueillèrent Et en son refrain disoit souvent "Haa chetif, que pourray ie faire?" Et toute nuyt demena tel deuil Au matin se leuerent les deux roys le plus coyement quilz peurent | & moult se merueillent quil pouoit auoir daultre part fut gillchault leue, & vint a son tief veoir son compaignon Il demande aux deux roys que son compaignon fut Et ilz luy dient quil auoit toute nuyt mene grant duel Lors entre en la chambre ou il estoit, et si tost comme il le ouyt venir il essuye ses yeulx, Adonc gallehault, cuidant que il dormist, saillist dehors de la chambre incontinent, apres le cheualier se leua Et gallehault vit que il auoit les yeulx rouges et enflez Adonc le prent par la main, et le tyre a part, et luy dist "Beau doulx compaignon, pourquoy vous occiez vous ainsi? dont vous vient ce duel que vous auez toute nuyt demene, & le desplaisir que vous auez? Je vous pryé pour dieu que vous me diez la cause, et ie vous ayderay se nul homme mortel y peult conseil mettre," & commence a plourer si durement comme sil veist moit la chose du monde que mieulx aymast Lors est gallehault moult a malayse et luy dit, "Beau doulx compaignon, dictes moy vostre mescheance | car il nest nul homme au monde, sil vous auoit riens forfait, que ie nen pourchassasse vostre droit" Et il dist que nul ne luy a riens meffrit "beau doulx amy, pourquoy menez vous doncques si grant duel? Vous poise il que ie vous ay fait mon maistre & mon compaignon?" "Haa," fait il, "vous auez assez plus fait pour moy que ie ne pourroye desservir, ne riens du monde ne me met a malaise que mon cueur, qui a toute paour que cueur mortel pourrait

Lancelot asks Galiot to return to Arthur and to report to him all the conversation

Lancelot sleeps with the two kings in Galiot's tent

but awakes at midnight and makes a great moaning

Galiot comes to see after Lancelot

finds him with his eyes red and swollen,

and conjures him to tell him what the matter is

Lancelot cries bitterly,

and says that it is his heart which has all the dread that it is possible for mortal heart to have

auoir Si doubte moult que vostre grant debonnairete  
ne me occie" De ceste chose est gallehault moult a  
They go to Mass, malayse, si reconforte son compaignon Apres allerent  
ouyr masse Quant vint que le prestre eut fait trois  
parties du corps de nostre seigneur, gallehault se trait  
auant, et tient son compaignon par la main, & luy  
monstre le corps de nostre seigneur que le prestre tenoit  
entre ses mains, Puis luy dist "doncques ne croyez  
vous pas bien que cest le corps de nostre saulueur?"  
"Voirement le croy ie bien," fait le cheualier Et  
gallehault luy dist "beau doulx amy, or ne me  
mescreez mye que ces trois parties de chair que ie vois  
en semblance de pain, ia ne feray en ma vie chose que  
ie cuyde qui vous ennuye mais toutes les choses que  
ie scauray qui vous plairont, pourchasseray a mon  
pouvoir" "sire," fait il, "grant mercys" A tant se  
faisent iusques apres la messe | et lors demanda galle-  
hault a son compaignon quil fera, "Sire," fait il,  
"vous ne laisserez mie le roy en ce point | ains yrez luy  
faire compaignie" "Sire," fait il, "grant mercys,"  
A tant sen part de luy, si le rebaille aux preudhommes  
de la court du roy artus si font de luy grant signeure  
sicomme ilz peuent

After dinner the  
King and Queen  
visit Gawain and  
he asks Galiot  
who made peace  
between him and  
Arthur

'A knight' says  
Galiot  
But what  
knight asks  
Gawain

The Black  
Knight, answers  
the Queen show  
him to us

'I cannot,' says  
Galiot he is  
not from my  
country,

E quant vint apres disner, sy furent le roy & la  
royne & gallehault appuyez au liet de messire  
gauvain, tant que messire gauvain dist a gallehault  
"Sire, or ne vous poise dune chose que ie vous de-  
manderay" "Certes," fait gallehault, "non fera il"  
"sire, celle paix qui fut entre vous & mon oncle, par  
qui fut elle, pai la chose au monde qui plus vous  
aymez?" "Sire," fait il, "vous me auez tant coniuire  
que ie le vous diray Vng cheualier la fist" "Et qui  
est le cheualier?" fait messire gauvain "Si maist  
dieu," fait gallehault, "ie ne scay" "Qui fut celluy  
aux noires armes?" deist messire gauvain "Ce fut,"  
fait il, "vng cheualier," "Tant," fait il, "en pouez  
vous bien dire | mais acquitter vous conuent" "Je  
me suis acquite de ce que me coniuirastes Ne plus ne  
vous en diray ores | ne rien ne vous en eusse ores dit,  
se vous ne me eussiez coniuire" "Par dieu," fait la  
royne, "ce fut le cheualier noir | mais faictes le nous  
monstrer" "Qui | moy, dame?" fait gallehault, "ie  
le vous puys bien monstrer sicomme celluy qui mien  
nen scait!" "Taisez vous," fait la royne, "il est  
demoure avec vous, & hier porta voz armes" "Dame,"  
fait il | "il est vray | mais ie ne le vys oncques puis  
que ie party du roy a la premiere fois" "comment,"

fait le roy, "ne le cognoissiez vous mye | ie cuydoye que il fust de vostre terre" "Si maist dieu, non est," fait gallehault "certes," fait le roy, "ne de la myenne non est il mye" | Moult tindrent longuement gallehault a parolle le roy et la royne pour auoir le nom du cheualier | mais plus nen peuvent traire et messue gauuain craint quil ne ennuye a gallehault, si dist au roy "Or en laissez a tint le parler certes le cheualier est preudhomme, & pleust a dieu que ie luy ressemblasse" Moult loe messire gauuain le cheualier Si en ont la parolle lasee | et gallehault la recommence et dit "Sire, veistes vous oncques meilleur cheualier que celluy au noir escu?" "certes," fait le roy, "ie ne vy oncques cheualier de qui ie aymasse mieulx l'acointance pour cheualerie," "Non" | fait gallehault "Or me dites," fait gallehault, "par la foy que vous devez a ma dame qui cy est, combien vous voudriez auoir donne pour auoir son acointance a tousioursmais?" "Si maist dieu," fait il, "ie luy partiroye la moytie de tout ce que ie pourroye auoir, fors seulement de ceste dame" "Certes," fait gallehault, "assez y mettriez Et vous, messire gauuain, se dieu vous doint sante que tant desirez, quel meschief en feriez vous pour auoir compaignie a si preudhomme?" Et quant messire gauuain lot, si pense vng petit comme celluy qui ne cuyde iamaiz auoir sante "Se dieu me donnoit la sante que ie desire | ie voudroye orendroit estre vne des plus belles dames du monde, par conuenant quil me aymast tous les iours de sa vie" "par ma foy," fait gallehault, "assez y auez mis" "Et vous, madame, quel meschief feriez vous par conuenant que vng tel cheualier fust tousiours en vostre seruce?" "par dieu," fait elle, "messire gauuain y a mis toutes les offres que dame y peult mettre" Et monseigneur gauuain & tous aultres se commencerent a rire "Gallehault," fait messire gauuain, "qui tous nous auez adiurez par le serment que ie vous comuray, ores qui voudriez vous y auoir mys?" "Si maist dieu," fait gallehault, "ie y voudroye auoir tourne mon honneur a honte, par tel si que ieusse a tousioursmais vng si bon cheualier en ma compaignie" "Sy maist dieu," fait messire gauuain, "plus y auez mys que nous" et lors se pensa messire gauuain que cestoit le noir cheualier qui le paiz auoit faite | car pour luy auoit tourne son honneur a honte, quant il veit quil estoit au dessus Et le dist gauuain a la royne, & se fut la cause dont gallehault fut plus prise, Moult tindrent longuement parolles du cheualier

and Gahot will not disclose the knight's name,

but asks Arthur if he ever saw a better knight and what he would give to know him henceforth

'Half of all I have, except my wife says Arthur

And what would you give Gawayn?

"I should like to turn woman if he would love me all his life

"I can offer no more than Gawayn says the Queen

'Well says Gahot I would turn all my honour into shame for his sake

So Gawayn concludes that it was the Black Knight who brought about the peace

The Queen walks  
away with Galiot  
tells him she loves  
him much and  
prays him to let  
her see the Black  
Knight

He promises to do  
all he can for her

and the Queen  
says I shall be  
sure to see him if  
you try,

for he is in your  
custody Send  
and get him

Arthur wishes  
Galiot's people  
and his own to be  
brought nearer  
to one another

Galiot returns to  
Lancelot,

tells him what the  
King, Gawain  
and the Queen  
have said of him

and asks him  
what answer he  
shall give the  
Queen

et la royne sadressa, et dist quelle sen vouloit aller vers la bretesche pour veoir les prez, et gallehault la conuoye si le print la royne par la main & luy dist "Gallehault, ie vous ayne moult, & il est vray que vous auez le cheualier en vostre baillie, & par aduenture il est tel que ie le congnois bien, si vous prie si cher que vous auez mamour, que vous faciez tant que ie le voye" "Dame," fait gallehault, "ie nen ay encores nulle saisine | & ne le vy puis que la paix fut faicte de moy & du roy Et se il estoit or en mon tref, si y conuen diroit il aultre volente que la vostre & que la mienne Et bien saichez que tant me auez conuure que ie mettray tout le pouoir que ie pourray comment vous pourriez parler a luy?" "se vous en faictes vostre pouoir," fait elle, "ie le verray bien, & ie men attens a vous, et faictes tant que ie soye vostre a tousiours car cest vng des hommes du monde que ie verroye plus volentiers" "Dame," fait il, "ie en feray mon pouoir" "Grant mercys," fait elle "Or gardez que ie le voye au plus tost que vous pourrez | car il est en vostre baillie, ie le scay bien | et se il est en vostre terre, enuoyez le querre" Atant sen part gallehault & sen vient au roy Et monseigneur gauvain & le roy lui dient "gallehault, ie suis deliure de mes gens, ores faictes approcher voz gens des nostres, ou ie feray approcher les nostres des vostres | Car nous sommes a priuee mesgne" "Sire," faict gallehault, "ie feray approcher les miens daultre part de cest riuiere si que mon tref sera endroit le vostre, et sera vne nef appareillee en quoy nous passerons dicy la et de la icy" "Certes," fait le roy, "moult auez bien dit"

**L**Ors sen va Gallehault en sa tente, et trouue son compaignon moult pensif Il luy demande comment il a puis fait, Et il dist, "bien, se paour ne me mestriast" et gallehault dist, "de quoy auez vous telle paour?" "que ie ne soye congneu," dist il "or nen ayez mie paour, car vous ny serez ia congneu, se vostre volente ne y est," Lors luy compte les offres que le roy et mesure gauvain ont fait pour luy, et ce que la royne dit | et comment la royne la tenu a grant parlement de le veoir | et comme il luy respondit "et saichez que elle na de nully si tres grant desir de veoir comme de vous Et monseigneur la Roy ma pryé que ie face mes gens approcher | car nous sommes tiop loing lung de lautre Or me dictes que vous voulez que je face | car il est en vostre plaisir" "Je loue que vous facez ce que monseigneur le roy vous pryé," "Et a ma

dame que respondray ie, beau doulx amy?" "Certes," fait il, "ie ne scay" Lors commence a souspirer Et gallehault luy deist "Beau doulx amy, ne vous esmayez point | mais dictes moy comment vous voulez quil soit | car bien sachez quil sera ainsi comme vous vouldrez | et ie aymeroye mieulx estie courrouce a la moytie du monde que a vous tout seul ores me dictes quil vous en plaist" "Sire," fait ledit cheualier, "ce que vous me louerez | car ie suis en vostre garde desormais" "Certes," fait gallehault, "il me semble que pour veoir ma dame la royne il ne vous peult empyrer" Lors appercent gallehault assez de son penser, & le tient si court quil luy octroye ce quil demande | "mais il conuendra," fait il, "que il soyt fait celement, que nul ne le saiche | fors moy et vous" Et gallehault dit que il ne se soulye point "Or dictes," (fait le cheualier a gallehault,) "a ma dame que vous me auez enuoye querre" "Sur moy en laissez le surplus," dit Gallehault Lors sen part a tant, et commanda ses trefz a tendre la ou il auoit en conuenant au roy | et son seneschal fist son commandement

Lancelot sighs,

and says "What ever you advise

' There will be no harm in seeing her answers Gahot

Lancelot says the matter must be managed secretly, and they agree that Gahot shall tell the Queen he has sent to seek for Lancelot

¶ Comment gallehault fist tant que la royne veit Lancelot, Et comment ilz se araisonnerent ensemble, et parlerent de plusieurs choses

How Guinevere and Lancelot meet and talk

**A** Tant sen partit gallehault & sen vient au tref du roy, & si tost comme la royne le voit, si luy courut a lencontie, & luy demande comment il auoit employte la besongne "dame," fait il, "ie en ay fait tant que ie craing que lamour de vostre pryere ne me tolle la chose du monde que ie ayme plus" "Sy maist dieu," fait elle, "vous ne perderez riens par moy que ie ne vous rende ou double | mais que y pouez vous," fait elle, "perdre?" "Celluy mesmes que vous demandez," fait gallehault | "Car ie doubte quil ne se courrouce, et que ie ne le perde a tousiours" "Certes," fait elle, "ce ne pouray ie pas rendre | mais ia par moy ne le perderez, se dieu plaist Et touteffoys dictes moy quant il viendra" | "dame," fait il, "quant il pourra | car ie lay enuoye querre, et croy que il ne demourra mye longuement" De leui conseil entendit ung peu la dame de mallehault qui sen prenoit garde et nen faisoit mye semblant Lors sen partit gallehault et vient a ses gens qui estoyent logez la ou il auoit commande

The Queen asks Gahot what he has done for her

Sent to seek for your knight, says he

Gahot returns to his men,

**Q** Vant il fut descendu, il parla a son Seneschal et luy deist | "quant ie vous enuoyeray querre, venez a moy, vous & mon compaignon en ce lieu la"

and tells his Seneschal to bring Lancelot when he sends for him

Et le roy des cent cheualiers, qui son seneschal estoit, dist que moult volentiers feroit son commandement & son plaisir Lors salua Gallehault son compaignon, et sen retourna a la court Et quant la royne veit gallehault qui estoit venu, elle luy dist que il gardast bien et loyaulment ce quil luy auoit promis Et il luy dist | "dame, ie cuyde que vous verrez ennuyt ce que vous auez tant desire" Quant elle ouyt ce, si en fut moult ioyeuse, et moult luy ennuya ce iour pour sa volente acomplir du desir *que* elle auoit de parler a celuy ou toutes ses pensees estoient Lors luy deist Gallehault, "nous yrons apres soupper en ce vergier la aual" | et elle luy octroye Quant ce vint apres souper, si appelle la royne | la dame de mallehault | et dame Lore de carduel, une sienne pucelle, et sen vont tout droit la ou gallehault auoyt dit | et gallehault prent ung escuyer et luy dist "Va et dy a mon seneschal que il viengne la ou ie luy commanday" Et celuy y va Apres ne demoura guaires que le seneschal y vint, luy et le cheualier Ilz estoient tous deux de grant beaulte, Quant ilz approcherent, si congneut la dame de mallehault le cheualier comme celluy que elle auoyt eu maint iour en sa baillie Et pource quelle ne vouloit mye que il la congneut, se embroncha, et ilz passent oultre le seneschal les salue Et gallehault dit a la royne "Dame, lequell vous semble il que se soit?" | et elle dit "Certes, ilz sont tous deux beaulx cheualliers | mais ie ne voy corps ou il puisse auoir tant de prouesse que le noir cheualier auoit" "or saichez, dame, que cest l'ung de ces deux" | a tant sont venuz auant, et le cheualier tremble si que a peine peult saluer la royne, & la royne sen esmerueille lors se agenouillent eulx deux, et le cheualier la salue | mais cest moult pourement | car moult estoit honteux Lors se pense la royne que cest il Et gallehault dit au seneschal "allez, si factes a ces dames compaignie" Et celluy fait ce que son sire luy commande A doneques la royne prent le cheualier par la main & le assiet iouxte elle Sy luy fait moult beau semblant & dit en riant "Sire, moult vous auons desire, tant que, dieu mercy et gallehault, vous voyons et nonpourtant encores ne croy ie mye que ce soit celluy que ie demande | & gallehault ma dit que cestes vous | & encores vouldroye scauoir qui vous estes par vostre bouche mesmes, se vostre plaisir y estoit" Et celuy dit que il ne scait | et oneques ne la regarda au visaige Et la royne ce esmerueille que il peult auoir, tant quelle souspeconne une partie de ce quil a Et gallehault, qui

Galot then goes  
back to the  
Queen says he  
thinks she will  
see her knight  
that evening and  
appoints to meet  
her in an Orchard  
below

After supper the  
Queen goes to the  
Orchard,

and Galot sends  
for his Seneschal  
and the Knight,

who come

The Queen at first  
cannot think that  
either is the black  
knight,

but one is so  
bashful that she  
fixes on him,

seats him by her,  
smiles on him,  
says she has so  
longed to see him

and now he must  
tell her who he is  
I don't know  
he answers

le voigt si honteux, pense quil veult dire a la royne son  
 penser seul a seul lors sen vient messire gauvain celle  
 part, et fait rasseoir les damoyselles pour ce que leuees ses-  
 toient encontre luy Puis commencent a parler de maintes  
 choses Et la Royne dit au cheualier, "Beau sire,  
 pourquoy vous celez vous de moy? Certes il ne y a  
 cause pourquoy, nestes vous mie celluy qui porta les  
 noires armes, et qui vainquist lassemblee?" "Dame,  
 nenny" | "et nestes vous pas celluy qui porta lende-  
 main les armes a gallehault?" "Dame, ouy," "Donc  
 estes vous celluy qui vainquistes lassemblee qui fut  
 faicte le premier iour par deuers nous et par<sup>1</sup> deuers  
 Gallehault?" "Dame, non suis" Quant la royne ot  
 ainsi pailer le cheualier, a donc apperceoit elle bien quil  
 ne veult mie congnoistre quil eust vaincue lassemblee,  
 si len prise mieulx la royne | car quant vng homme se  
 loe luy mesmes, il tourne son honneur a honte | et  
 quant alu'truy le loe, adonc il est mieulx prise "Or  
 me dictes," fait la royne a lancelot | "qui vous fist  
 cheualier?" "Dame," fait il, "vous," "Moy?" fait  
 elle, "Et quant?" "Dame," fait il, "vous remembrez  
 vous point quant vng cheualier vint a Kamalot, lequel  
 estoit naure de deux troncons de lance au corps, et  
 dune espee parmy la teste, et que vng varlet vint a  
 court en vng vendredy, et fut cheualier le dymenche, et  
 deffera le cheualier?" "De ce," fait elle, "me souient  
 il bien | et se dieu vous aist, feustes vous ce que la  
 dame du lac amena en court vestu dune robe blanche?"  
 "Dame, ouy" "Et pourquoy dictes vous donc que ie  
 vous fis cheualier?" "Dame," fait il, "ie dys vray |  
 Car la coustume est telle que nul ne peut estre cheual-  
 lier sans ceindre espee Et celluy de qui il tient lespee,  
 le faict cheualier, de vous la tiens ie Car le roy ne  
 la me donna onques Pour ce dis ie que vous me feistes  
 cheualier" De ce est la royne moult ioyeuse | "ou vous  
 en allastes vous au partir de court?" "Dame, ie men  
 allay pour secourir la dame de noehault," "Et durant ce  
 temps me mandastes vous riens?" "Dame, ouy | ie vous  
 enuoyay peuz pucelles" "Il est vray," dist la royne  
 "Et quant vous partistes de noehault, trouuastes vous nul  
 cheualier qui se reclamast de moy?" "Dame, ouy, vng  
 qui gardoit vng gue, et me dist que descendisse de dessus  
 mon cheual et le vouloit auoir, et ie luy demanday a qui il  
 estoit | et il dist a vous Puis luy demanday apres, qui le  
 commandoyt Et il me dist quil nauoyt nul commande-  
 ment que le sien Et adonques remys le pied en lestrief et

Gahot leaves the  
 two to them  
 selves

and the Queen  
 asks the knight  
 Are not you he  
 who wore the  
 black armour  
 and overcame  
 everyone?

'No I am not,  
 saith he

refusing to praise  
 himself

'Then who made  
 you a knight and  
 when?

"You at Kama-  
 lot when the  
 pieces of a spear  
 were drawn out  
 of the wounded  
 knight,

and you girded on  
 my sword thus  
 knighting me

and I went away  
 to help the Lady  
 of Noehault and  
 sent you two  
 damsels

Then I met a  
 man who said he  
 was your knight

<sup>1</sup> The original has *pat*



and I fought him  
(for which I crave  
your pardon)

After that I took  
the Sorrowful  
Castle and there  
I saw you thrice,

last when you  
thought you had  
lost Gawain and  
his companions,

and I helped to  
deliver him from  
prison

The Queen asks  
the knight who  
was in the turret  
above his room  
there

"A damsel whom  
I never dishon-  
oured,  
but I asked her  
not to leave till  
she saw my mes-  
senger or me  
which I then  
forgot and kept  
her there a very  
long time

How the Queen  
knew Lancelot

When she heard  
of this damsel the  
Queen knew it  
must be Lancelot

remontay | Car ie estoie ia descendu | et luy dis que il  
ne lauoit point, et me combatis a luy Et ie seiv bien  
que ie vous fis oultraige, si vous en eue mercy" | "Certes  
a moy ne en feistes vous point | Car il nestoyt nuyt a  
moy | et luy sceuz mauuais gre de ce quil ce reclama de  
moy Mais or me dictes on vous en allastes la?" "Dame,  
ie men allay a la douloureuse garde" | "& qui la con-  
quist?" "Dame, ie y entray" | "et ne vous y iiz ie onc-  
ques" "Ouy, plus de troys foys" "Et en quel temps?"  
fist elle "Dame," fist il, "vng iour que ie vous deman-  
day se vous voulez leans entrer, Et vous dcistes ouy |  
et estiez moult esbahye par semblant" "Et quel escu  
portiez vous?" "Dame, ie portay a la premiere foys  
vng escu blanc a vne bande de belif vermeille Et  
lautre foys vng ou il y auoyt deux bendes" | "Et vous  
vys ie plus?" "Ouy, la nuyt que vous cuidiez auon  
perdu messire Gauvain et ses compagnons, et que les  
gens cryoyent que len me prenist, Je vins hors a tout  
mon escu a troys bendes" "Certes," fuct elle, "ce poise  
moy | car se on vous eust detenu, tous les enchan-  
tements feussent demourez | Mais or me dictes, fustes  
vous ce qui iettastes messire Gauvain de prison?"  
"Dame, ie y ayday a mon pouon" "Cutes," fait elle,  
"en toutes les choses que vous me dictes ie nay trouue  
si non verite Mais or me dictes qui estoit en vne tour  
nelle dessus la chambre monseigneur" "Dame, cestoyt  
vne pucelle que ie ne villennay onques | Car ma dame  
du lac la me auoyt enuoyee | si me trouua en ceste tour-  
nelle | il fut assez qui la honnora pour moy Quant ie  
ouy nouvelles de monseigneur Gauvain, si en fut moult  
angoisseux, et men party de la Damoyselle qui avecques  
moy debuot venir, et luy priay que elle ne se remuast  
tant que elle eust mon messaige ou moy Si fus si sur-  
pris de tresgrant affaire que ie loubliay | et elle fut  
plus loyalle uers moy que ie ne fus courtois vers elle |  
car onques ne se remua iusques a ce quelle eut mes  
enseignes, et ce fut grant piece apres"

Comment la royne congneut Lancelot apres quil eut  
longuement parle a elle, et quil luy eut compte  
de ses aduentures Et comment la premiere  
acontance fut faicte entre lancelot et la royne  
genieure par le moyen de gallehault

Quant la royne eut parle de la damoiselle, si scait  
bien que cest Lancelot Si luy enquist de toutes  
les choses quelle auoit ouy de luy, et de toutes le trouua  
vray disant, "Or me dictes," fait elle, "vous vy ie  
puis?" "Ouy, dame, telle heue que vous me eustes

bien mestier | car ieusse este noye a kamalot se ne eussiez vous este" "Comment! feustes vous celluy que daguenet le fol print?" "Dame, prins fus ie sans faulte" "Et ou alliez vous?" "Dame, ie alloye apres vng cheuallier" "Et vous combatistes vous a luy" | "dame, ouy" "Et dillec ou allastes vous?" "Dame, ie trouuay deux grans villains que me occirent mon cheual | mais messire yuain, qui bonne aduenture ayt, men donna vng" "Ha, ha," fait elle, "ie scay bien qui vous estes, Vous auez nomancelot du lac" Il se taist "Par dieu," faict elle, "purneant le celez | long temps a que messire Gauvain apporta nouuelles de vostre nom a court," Lors luy compta comment messire yuain auoit compte que la damoysselle auoit dit | cest la tierce "Et anten quelles armes portastes vous?" "Vnes vermes" "Par mon chef cest verite Et auant hier pourquoy feistes vous tant darmes comme vous feistes?" Et il commenca a soupirer "Dictes moy seurement | Car ie scay bien que pour aulcune dame ou damoysselle le feistes vous, et me dictes qui elle est, par la foy que vous me deuez" "Haa, dame, ie voy bien quil le me conquent dire, cestes vous" "Moy?" faict elle "Voire, dame" "Pour moy ne rompistes vous pas les troyes lances que ma pucelle vous porta?" "Car ie me mis bien hors du mandement, dame, ie fis pour elle ce que ie deuz, et pour vous ce que ie peux" "Et combien a il que vous me aymez tant?" "Des le iour que ie fus tenu pour cheuallier, et ie ne lestoye mye" | "Par la foy que vous me deuez, dont vindrent ces amours que vous auez en moy mises?" "dame," fait il, "vous le me feistes faire qui de moy feistes vostre amy, se vostre bouche ne me a menty" "Mon amy!" faict elle, "comment?" "Dame," fait il, "ie vins deuant vous quant ie eu prins congie monseigneur le roy | si vous commanday a dieu, et dis que ie estoye vostre cheuallier en tous lieux Et vous me dictes que vostre amy et vostre cheuallier voulliez vous que ie feusse Et ie dys, "a dieu! dame" Et vous distes "a dieu! mon beau doulx amy!" Ce fut le mot qui preudhomme me fera, se ie le suis, ne oncques puis ne fus a si grant meschef que il ne men remembrast Ce mot ma conforte en tous mes ennuyes Cest mot ma de tous maulx guaray Cest mot ma fait riche en mes pouretez," "Par ma foy," fait la royne, "ce mot fut en bonne heure dict | et dieu en soyt aoure | ne ie ne le prenoye pas acertes comme vous feistes, et a maint preudhomme ay ie ce dict ou ie ne pensay oncques riens que le dire Mais la coustume est

and asks him if  
he was the knight  
whom Daguenet  
took He answers  
Yes and that  
two rascals killed  
his horse and  
Yvain gave him  
another

' Ah then your  
name is Lance  
lot says she

'and for what  
lady or damsel  
did you do such  
feats of arms the  
day before yes  
terday?

"For you Lady  
and for you I  
broke the three  
lances that you  
maiden broug<sup>ht</sup>  
me

for you had made  
me your friend  
and said I was  
your knight in  
all lands, and bid  
me adieu as your  
own sweet friend

That word has  
never left me but  
always been my  
strength and  
wealth

Oh but that  
was only an ordi-  
nary compli-  
ment says Gui-  
nevere to tease  
him

This grieves Lan-  
celot so that he  
nearly faints at  
which Gaihot is  
greatly grieved

tells the Queen  
that Lancelot is  
the gallantest  
and the best of  
men

and prays her to  
have mercy on  
him

What mercy?  
says she

there is nothing  
he can ask of me  
that I will not  
do but he will  
not ask

"He does not  
dare answer  
Gaihot but I will  
ask for him

telle des cheualiers que font a munte dame semblant  
de telles choses dont a gueres ne leur est au cueu " Et  
ce disoit elle pour veoir de combien elle le pourroit  
mettre en malaise, Car elle veoit bien quil ne preten-  
doit a autre amour que a la sienne | mais elle se delec-  
toyt a sa malaisete veoir, et il eut si grant angoisse que  
par vng pou qzai ne se pasma | & la royne eut paour  
quil ne cheist, si appella gallehault, et il y vint acouant  
Quant il voyt que son compaignon est si courrouce, si  
en a si grant angoisse que plus ne peut " Haa, dame,"  
fait gallehault, "vous le nous pourrez bien tollir, et ce  
seroit trop grand dommaige" "Certes, sire, se seroit  
mon," "Et ne scauez vous pour qui il a tant fait  
darmes?" faict gallehault "Certes, nenny," faict  
elle | "mais, se il est veoir ce qui ma este dict, cest  
pour moy," "Dame, se maist dieu, bien len pouez  
croire | car aussi comme il est le plus preudhomme de  
tous les hommes | aussi est son cueur plus vray que  
tous aultres" "Voirement," fait elle, "direz vous quil  
seroit preudhomme se vous scauez quil a fait darmes  
puis quil fut cheualier" Lors luy compte tout ainsi  
comment vous auez ouy | "et sachez quil a ce faict  
seulement pour moy," fait elle Lors luy prie galle-  
hault, & dist "Pour dieu, dame, ayez de luy mercy,  
et faictes pour moy ainsi comme ie fis pour vous quant  
vous men priastes" "Quelle mercy voulez vous que  
ien aye?" "Dame, vous scauez que ie vous ayme  
sur toutes, et il a fait pour vous plus que oncques  
cheualier ne fist pour dame, et sachez que la paix de  
moy et de monseigneur neust ia este faicte se neust il  
este" "Certes," faict elle, "il a plus faict pour moy  
que ne pourroye desservir, ne il ne me pourroyt chose  
requerre dont ie le peusse esconduyre | mais il ne me  
requert de riens | ains est tant melencolieux que mei-  
ueilles" "Dame," fait gallehault, "auez en mercy, il  
est celluy qui vous ayme plus que soy mesmes Si  
maist dieu, ie ne scauoye riens de sa volente quant il  
vint, fois quil doubtoit de estre congneu, ne oncques  
plus ne men descourrit" "Je en auray," fait elle,  
"telle mercy comme vous voudrez" "Dame, vous  
auez fait ce que ie vous ay iequis, aussi doy ie bien  
faire ce que vous me requerez" Se dit la royne, "il ne  
me requert de riens" "Certes, dame," fait gallehault,  
"il ne ose | car len ne aymera ia riens par amours que  
len ne craigne | mais ie vous en prie pour luy, & se ie  
ne vous en priasse, si le deussiez vous pourchasser Car  
plus riche tresor ne pourriez vous conquerer" "Certes,"

fait elle, "ie le scay bien et ie en feray tout ce que vous commanderez" "Dame," fait Gallehault, "grant mercy Je vous prie que vous luy donnez vostre amour, et le retenez pour vostre cheuallier a tousiours, et deuenez sa loyalle dame toute vostre vie | et vous le aurez fait plus riche que se vous luy auez donne tout le monde"

"Certes," faict elle, "ie luy ottroye que il soyt mien | et moy toute sienne, et que par vous soyent amendez tous les meffaitz" "Dame," faict Gallehault, "grant mercy Or conuient il commencement de seruice,"

"Vous ne deuserez riens," fait la royne, "que ie ne face" "Dame," faict il, "grant mercy | donc baisez le deuant moy pour commencement de vrayes amours" "Du baiser," faict elle, "ie ne voy ne lieu ne temps | et ne doubtez pas," faict elle, "que ie ne le voulsisse faire aussi voullentiers quil feroit | mais ces dames sont cy qui moult se merueillent que nous auons tant fait, si ne pourroyt estre que ilz ne le vissent Nompourtant, se il veult, ie le baisera voullentiers" Et il en est si ioyeux que il ne peult respondre si non tant quil dict

"Dame," faict il, "grant mercy" | "dame," faict Gallehault, "de son vouloir nen doubtez ia | Car il cst tout vostre, bien le sachez, ne ia nul ne sen apperceuera, Nous troyz serons ensemble ainsi comme se nous conseillions" | "Dequoy me feroye ie pryer" | faict elle | "plus le vueil ie que vous" Lors se trayent a part, et font semblant de conseiller La Roynie voyt que le cheuallier nen ose plus faire, si le prent par le menton, et baise deuant Gallehault assez longuement Et la dame de Mallehault (*sic*) sceut de vray que elle le baisoyt Lors parla la Roynie qui moult estoit sage & vaillant dame "Beau doulx amy," faict elle, "tant auez faict que ie suys vostre, Et moult en ay grant ioye Or gardez que la chose soyt celee Car mestier en est Je suys une des Dames du monde dont len a greigneur bien dict, Et se ma renommee empiroyt par vous, il y auroyt layde amour et villaine | et vous, Gallehault, ie vous pryé que mon honneur gardez | Car vous estes le plus saige | Et se mal men venoyt, ce ne seroyt si non par vous, Et se ien ay bien et ioye, vous me lauez donnee" "Dame," faict Gallehault, "il ne pourroyt vers vous mesprendre, et ien ay bien faict ce que vous me commandastes Or vous pryé que faciez ma volente ainsi comme iay fait la vostre," "Dictes," faict elle, "tout ce quil vous plaira hardyement | car vous ne me scaurez chose commander que ie ne face"

"Dame," faict il, "donc mauez vous ottroye que ie

Then I will  
grant it says  
Queen Guinevere  
Gaiot prays her  
to give Lancelot  
her love and be  
come his loyal  
lady all her life

She promises to  
be Lancelot's

and that she will  
do everything she  
is told

Then kiss L'n  
celot before me  
says Gaiot

This Guinevere  
agrees to do it  
Lancelot wishes  
it

Gaiot says there  
is no doubt about  
Lancelot's wish

and as he is bash  
ful, the Queen  
takes him by the  
chin, and kisses  
him before Gai  
ot (The Lady  
of Mallehault  
sees her)

Guinevere tells  
Lancelot that she  
is his but charges  
him to keep the  
matter secret,

and Gaiot too

Gaiot promises  
thus

and asks Guine  
vere to make  
Lancelot his com  
paignon for ever

She takes Lancelot  
s hand gives  
him to Gahlot

and says she has  
given him Lancelot  
of the Lake,  
son of King Ban

This gives Gahlot  
more joy than  
ever he had be  
fore as he had  
often heard how  
Lancelot was the  
gallantest knight  
in the world

By the bright  
moonlight  
they recross the  
meads towards  
Lancelot's tent

and Gahlot sends  
Lancelot there  
while he conducts  
the Queen to Ar  
thur's tent,

and tells him they  
have only been  
looking at the  
fields by them  
selves

Gahlot sees the  
Queen to her  
tower

and then takes  
leave of Arthur  
and of Gawain

and goes to Lancelot's  
bed

seray son compaignon a tousiours " Certes," fait elle, " se de ce vous failloit, vous auriez mal employe la peine que vous auez prinse pour luy et pour moy " Lors prent le cheualier par la main, et dict " Gallehault, ie vous donne ce cheualier a tousiours sans ce que iay auant eu, et vous le me creancez ainsi " | et aussi le cheualier luy creance | " scauez vous," fait elle, " Gallehault, que ie vous ay donne lancelot du lac, le filz au roy ban de benoic," Ainsi luy a fait le cheualier congnoistre, qui moult en a grant honte Lors a gallehault greigneure roye quil neust oncques | car il auoit maintesfois ouy dire, comme parolles vont, que cestoyt le meilleur cheualier et le plus preux du monde, et bien scauoit que le roy ban auoit este moult gentil homme, et moult puissant de amys et de terre

Ainsi fut faicte la premiere acontance de la royne et de lancelot par gallehault | et Gallehault ne lauot oncques congneu que de veue, et pource luy fait creancer quil ne luy demanderoit son nom tant quil luy dist, ou autre pour luy Lors se leuerent tous troys, et il anuytoit durement Mais la lune estoyt luee, si faisoit cler | Si que elle luysoyt par toute la prairie | Lors sen retournerent a vne part contremont les piez droit vers le tref le cheualier, & le seneschal et gallehault vint apres luy & les dames tant quilz vindrent endroit les tentes de gallehault Lors enuoya Gallehault son compaignon a son tref, et prent conge de la royne, et gallehault la conuoie iusques au tref du Roy Et quant le roy les veyt, si demanda dont ilz venoyent " Sire," fait Gallehault, " nous venons de veoir ces pres a si peu de compaignie comment vous veez " Lors se assient, et parlent de plusieurs choses, si sont la Roynie et Gallehault moult ayses

A V chef de piece se leua la royne, et sen alla en la bretesche, gallehault la conuoie iusques la Puis la commande a dieu, et dist quil sen yroit gesir avec son compaignon " Bien auez fait," dit la royne, " il en sera plus ayse " | A tant sen part gallehault, et vient au roy prendre congie, et dist quil ne luy desplaie, et que il yra gesir avec les gens pource quil ny auoyt geu de grant piece, et dist " Sire, ie me doibz pener de faire leur volente | car ilz me ayment moult " " Sire," fait messire gauvain, " vous dictes bien, et len doit bien honnorer telz preudhommes qui les a " Lors sen part gallehault et vient a son compaignon, Ilz se coucherent tous deux en vng liet, et deviserent la une piece Si nous laisserons ores a parler de gallehault &

de son compaignon, et dirons de la royne qui est venu en la bretesche

**Q**uant gallehault fut party, la royne sen alla en vne fenestre, et commence a penser a ce que plus luy plaisoyt La dame de mallehault s'ap procha delle quant elle la vit seulle, et luy dist le plus priueement que elle peut "Haa, dame! pourquoy ne est bonne la compaignie de quatre?" La royne le ouyst bien, si ne dit mot, et fait semblant que iens nen ouyt Et ne demoura gueres que la dame dist celle parolle mesmes, la royne lapella et dist "Dame, pourquoy auez ce dit?" "Dame," fait elle, "pardonnez moi, ie nen diray ores plus | car par aduventure en ay plus dit que a moy n'appartient | & len ne se doit mi faire plus priuee de sa dame que len est | car tost en acquiert on hayne" "Si maist dieu," fait la royne, "vous ne me pourriez riens dire dont vous eussiez ma haine | ie vous tiens tant a saige et a courtoyse, que vous ne diriez riens qui fust encontre ma volente | Mais dictes hardyement | Car ie le vueil, et si vous en prie" "Dame," fait elle, "donc le vous diray ie | Je dy que moult est bonne la compaignie de quatre, Jay huy veu nouveau accointement que vous auez fait au cheualier qui parla a vous la bas en ce vergier Et scay bien que cest la personne du monde qui plus vous ayme, et vous ne auez pas tort se vous laymez | car vous ne pourriez vostre amour mieulx employer," "Comment," fait la royne, "le congnoissez vous?" "Dame," fait elle, "telle heure a este ouen que ie vous en eusse bien peu faire refus comme vous en pouez ores faire a moy | car ie lay tenu vng an et demy en prison Cest celluy qui vainquit lassemblee aux armes vermeilles | & celle de deuant hier aux armes noires, les vnes & les autres luy baillay ie, Et quant il fut auant hier sui la ruiere pensif, et ie luy voulu mander que il fist vaillamment armes, ie ne le faisoie sinon pour ce que ie esperoye quil vous aymast, si cuydoye telle heure fust que il me aymast | Mais il me mist tost hors de cuyder, tant me descouurit de son penser" Lors luy compta comment elle lauoyt tenu en prison an et demy | et pourquoy elle lauoyt prins "Or me dictes," fait la royne, "quelle compaignie vault mieulx de quatre que de troys | car mieulx est vne chose celee par trois que par quatre" "Certes non est cy endroit, et si vous diray Vray est que le cheualier vous ayme, et aussi fait il gallehault, et desor mais se conforteront lung lautre en quelque terre quilz soient Car icy ne seront ilz pas longuement et vous

Queen Guinevere goes to the window to think

and the Lady of Mallehault asks her why four are bad company

At first Guinevere will not hear this but the Lady repeats it, the Queen asks why she says it and the Lady asks pardon as perhaps she has said too much

'No says Guinevere

'speak boldly out, I wish it

'Then I must say that I think four very good company I saw the new acquaintance you made to day and know he is the man who loves you most in the world

I kept him a year and a half in prison and gave him both the red and the black arms in which he won the tourneys,

and I thought then that he loved me but he soon undeceived me

The Queen answers 'But tell me why four are better company than three'

Because though your knight loves you he loves Galiot too and they will not stay here

long but you will,  
and if you have  
no one else to tell  
your thought to,  
you will be forced  
to keep your faith  
to yourself, but  
if you will let me  
be a fourth  
we can comfort  
one another

Queen Guinevere  
agrees to this  
with great joy,

and tells the Lady  
that the knight is  
Lancelot of the  
Lake

At night the  
ladies sleep to-  
gether,

and talk of their  
new loves,

the Lady of Mal-  
lehault saying  
that she never  
loved but one  
and then only in  
thought (and  
that was Lance-  
lot)

The Queen thinks  
she will make the  
Lady and Gaiot  
fall in love with  
one another

Next morning  
they go to Ar-  
thur's tent  
and wake him,  
and then return  
over the mea-  
dows

demourerez cy toute seule, et ne le scaura nul fors  
vous | ne si ne auez a qui descouuoir vostre pensee, si  
porterez ainsi vostre faix toute seule | mais sil vous  
pleust que ie fusse la quarte en la compaignie entre nous  
deux dames, nous solacierons ainsi comme entre eulx  
deux cheualiers feront, si en seriez plus aise" "Scauez  
vous," fait la royne, "qui est le cheualhier?" "Se  
maist dieu," fait la dame, "nenny" "Vous auez bien  
ouy comment il se couurit vers moy" "Certes," faict  
la royne, "moult estes apperceuante, et moult conuen-  
droit estre sage qui vous vouldroit rien embler, & puis  
que ainsi est que vous lauez aperceu, et que vous me  
requerez la compaignie, vous laurez | mais ie vueil que  
vous portez vostre faix ainsi comme ie feray le mien"  
"Dame," faict elle, "ie feray ce que il vous plaira, pour  
ci haulte compaignie auoir" "En verite," faict la royne,  
"vous laurez | car meilleure compaignie que vous ne  
pourroye ie mye auoir" "Dame," fait elle, "nous  
serons ensemble toutes les heures quil vous plaira"  
"Jen suys ioyeuse," faict la Royne "Et nous affir-  
merons demain la compaignie de nous quatre" Lors  
luy compte de Lancelot, comment il auoyt ploure quant  
il regarda deuers elle, "et ie scay que il vous congneut,  
et sachez que cest lancelot du lac, le meilleur cheualhier  
qui viue" Ainsi parlerent longuement entre elles  
deux | et font moult grant ioye de leur accontement  
nouveau Iceelle nuyct ne souffrit oncques la Royne de  
logres que la dame de mallehault geust sinon auec elle |  
mais elle y geut a force Car elle doubtoyt moult de  
gesir auec si riche dame, Quant elles furent couchees si  
commencerent a parler de leurs nouvelles amours, La  
royne demanda a la dame de mallehault selle a[y]me  
nulluy par amours, et elle luy dict que nenny "Sachez,  
dame, que ie naymay oncques que vne foys, ne de celle  
amour ne fis ie que penser," et ce dit elle de lancelot,  
quelle auoit tant ayme comme femme pourroit aymer  
homme mortel | Mais elle nen auoit oncques aultre ioye  
eue, non pourtant ne dit pas que ce eust il este La  
royne pensa quelle feroyt ses amours de elle et de galle-  
hault, mais elle nen veult parler rusques a tant quelle  
scaura de gallehault sil la veult aymer ou non | car  
autrement ne len requerroit elle pas Lendemain se  
leuerent matin elles deux, & allerent au tref du roy, qui  
gisoit la pour faire a monseigneur gauvain et aux aultres  
cheualiers compaignie La royne sesueilla, & dist, "que  
moult estoit mauuais qui a ceste heure dormoyt" Lors  
se tournerent contreual les prez, et dames et damoyselles

avec elles Et ils allerent la ou l'acointement damours  
 auoyt este faict, et dict la Royne a la dame de mallehault  
 toute l'acointance de lancelot | et comme il estoit  
 esbahy deuant elle, et riens ne luy laissa a dire Puis  
 commenca a louer gallehault, et dit que c'estoit le plus  
 saige homme et le plus vertueux du monde, "Certes,"  
 fait elle, "ie luy compteray l'acointance de nous deux  
 quant il viendra, et sachez que il en aura grant ioye  
 Or allons | car il ne demourra gueres quil ne viengne"

where the meet-  
 ing with Lancelot  
 took place  
 and the Queen  
 tells the Lady of  
 Mallehault all  
 about it  
 and then praises  
 Galiot as the  
 wisest and best  
 man in the world

The rubric of the next chapter is as follows

¶ Comment la premiere acointance fut faicte de  
 gallehault et de la dame de malehault par le moyen de  
 la royne de logres Et comment lancelot & gallehault  
 sen alloient esbatre et deuser avec leurs dames

How Galiot be-  
 came acquainted  
 with the Lady of  
 Malyhault

It relates how Queen Guinevere requires Galiot to let her dispose of his love as he had disposed of hers To this he consents, and she commends him to the Lady of Mallehault Next, they arrange for the promised *parlement de eulx quatre*, and the queen points out to Lancelot the lady who had so many a day kept him in prison, i e, the Lady of Mallehault At recognizing his old acquaintance, Lancelot feels somewhat distressed, but is reassured by observing the new love-making between her and Galiot Seated in a wood, the four "demourerent grant piece, ne oncques ne tindrent parolles, fors tant seullement de accoller & de baisier comme ceulx qui volentiers le faisoient"

We next hear of Gawain's recovery, and of the separation of the party of four above spoken of Galiot takes Lancelot home with him to his own country, whilst the Lady of Mallehault remains for a time with the queen and Arthur When Lancelot is next spoken of, he is in Galiot's country, where we will now leave him



## NOTES TO THE APPENDIX

P xxiii *Descosse* = *d'Écosse*, of Scotland In Old French, words are frequently run together, thus we have *labbaye* for *l'abbaye*, *sesmeuent* for *s'emeuent*, etc Also the letter *s* is often replaced in modern French by an acute or circumflex accent, so that *Escosse* = *Écosse*, *chasteau* = *château*, etc The word *si* often occurs below with a great variety of meanings, *vi'* I, he, and, also, so, thus, etc

P xxiv *baillie*, given, entrusted *brouyn* (*brûlé*), being burnt *monstier*, monastery *garunes*, so in the original throughout, *garunes* is used in other romances

P xxv *avecques* = *avec*, with

P xxvi *adursion*, vision *behoudys*, tournament *nawe*, wounded *deffera* = *desferra*, unironed, it means that Lancelot drew the weapons out of the knight's wounds *deuers*, "Preposition relative au temps et au lieu dont on parle, près, vers, contie, proche, de *versus*" Roquefort *octroya*, permitted (authorized) *mouille*, *lit* wetted, insulted

P xxvii *veurent*, saw *escript* (*écrit*), written *l'assemblee*, the gathering, *ie* the war, strife *rua*, overthrew

P xxviii *mire*, physician *gue*, ford, pass *tresues*, a truce, spelt *treues* on p xxix

P xxix *esbatre*, to divert oneself In modern French, *s'ebattre*

P xxx *orrions*, shall hear *deust* = *dût* *cheoient*, from *cheoir*, to fall Compare *châte* *pouiz*, hairs *esbahy*, amazed *ortelz*, toes *chaille*, from *chalon*, to be anxious about *dilacion*, delay

P xxxi *paour*, fear. *mire*, physician *veufue*, old

P xxxii *cheuauche*, rides *boutte*, buts, pushes *recte* (*jete*), cast *cuyde*, I believe *Si maist dieu*, so God aid me Here *maist* is put for *maist* *oncques*, ever *ennuyt*, this night, to night, *lotroyera*, will grant him his request *conroy*, troops

P xxxiii *derrains* (*derniers*), last *busmes*, trumpets Or *y perra*, now it will appear *cudout*, believed, from the old verb *quider* *cheuauchent*, ride *ia*, already *tertre*, a small hill

P xxxiv *adresse*, a cross path *huy*, just before, *lit* this day  
Lat *hodè* *se pasme*, swoons *leuns*, thither

P xxxv *ores*, now *huy*, to-day *preudhomme*, a wise and  
prudent man *lottroye*, permits him *trej*, tent *nenny*, no! *uns*,  
before *guerpiron*, will leave *deduys*, amusements, diversions

P xxxvi *leans*, there *gerie*, will lie *las*, tired *Ains*, but

P xxxvii *semondray*, shall ask *esbahy*, amazed *toller*, take  
away *creanca*, promised *lees*, wide, full *lees*, lists

P xxxviii *emmy le pas*, in the midst of the passage *huchu*, to  
cry aloud

P xxxix *heue*, lifts *saisine*, disposal *enseignes*, tokens  
*ancoys*, first of all

P xl *oncques mes*, never *a resiouyr* (*réjour*), in amusing  
*escondroye*, will refuse *me poyse*, it troubles me *peca*, long ago  
*se embronche*, covers his face

P xli *sen esueillerent*, awoke thereat *Adonc*, then *riens for  
fait*, anyway injured

P xlii *ne me mescreer mye que*, do not doubt me more than

P xliii *dont*, gives, were to give

P xliv *mesgrie*, properly the *suite* or household of a prince, see  
Roquesfort s v *magne* and *maignee* *nef*, a boat *loue*, advise

P xlv *vous esmuyer*, afflict yourself *courrouce*, wrath, dis  
pleased

P xlvi *verquier*, orchard *auai*, below *se embroncha*, she veiled  
herself, or, hid herself *iouste*, beside

P xlvii *maintes*, many *ot*, heard *ten prise meula*, esteemed  
it better *loe*, praises *deffera*, dis ironed, drew the weapons out  
of *lestref*, the stirrup

P xlviii *leans* (*la dedans*), there *belyf* We find in Cotgrave's  
Fiench Dictionary, "*Belic*, a kind of red or geueles, in Blazon "  
*enseignes*, tokens, message

P xlix *mestier*, serviceable *dillec*, thence *pouneant*, for  
nothing, in vain *voire*, truly *commanday a dieu*, commended to  
God, bade farewell

P li *mestier en est*, there is need of it *greigneur bien*, exceed-  
ingly well, very highly

P lii *greigneure*, greater *anuytort*, became night *ie me doibr  
pener*, I ought to take pains

P liii *ouen*, this year



# The Romans

of

## Lancelot of the Laik.

---

### [PROLOGUE]

<p><b>T</b>He soft morow ande The lustee Aperill,          The wynter set, the stormys in exill,          Quhen that the brycht <i>and</i> fresch illumynare          Upristh arly in his fyre chare          His hot courß in to the orient,          And frome <i>his</i> spere his goldine streamis sent          Wpone the grond, in maner off mesag,          One euery thing to valkyne thar curage,          That natur haith set wnder hire mycht,          Boith gyrß, and flour, <i>and</i> euery lusty vicht          And namly thame that felith the affay          Of lufe, to schew the kalendis of may,          Throw birdis fonge <i>with</i> opine wox one hy,          That feffit not one lufar's for to cry,          Left thai forþhet, throw flewth of Ignorans,          The old wface of lowis obferuans          And frome I can the bricht face aspy,          It deuit me no langare fore to ly,</p>	<div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>[Fol. 1.]              In April when              the fresh lumi              nary upriseth</p> </div> <div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>and sendeth from              his sphere his              golden streams</p> </div> <div style="margin-top: 100px;"> <p>and when I espy              his bright face,</p> </div>
<p>4</p> <p>8</p> <p>12</p> <p>16</p>	

I walk forth, be wailing my sad life	Nore that loue schuld fleuth In to me finde, Bot walkine suith, bewalinge in my mynde The dredful lyve endurit al to longe, Sufferans in loue of forouful harmys stronge, The scharpe daies and the hewy jerys, Quhill phebus thus huth passith al his speis, Vithoutine hope oie traufinge of comfort ,	20     24
The sword of love caues my heart	So be such meime fatit was my sort Thus in my faull Rolinge al my wo, My carful hart carwing can In two The derdful fuerd of lowis hot diffire , So be the morow set I was a-fyre In felinge of the accerß hot <i>and</i> colde, That haith my hart in sich a fevu holde, Only to me thare was noße vthin esß	28     32
My lady knoweth not how I am wo begone [Fol 1 b]	Bot thinkme qhow I schulde my lady plesß The scharp assay and ek the Inw art pame Of dowblit wo me neulyngs can confitrein, Quhen that I have remembrit one my thocht How sche, quhois bewte al my harm haith wrocht, Ne knouth not how I ame wo begone, Nor how that I ame of hie seruandis one , And in my self I can nocht fynde the meyne In to quhat wyß I fal my wo compleine	36     40
I walked thus in the feild, and came to a well beseen garden	Thus in the feild I walkith to <i>and</i> floo, As thochtful wicht that felt of nocht bot woo, Syne to o gardinge, that wesß weil beseß, Of quiche the feild was al depaynt witt greß The tendyre and the lusty flouris new Up thröus the greß vpone thar stalkis grew Aghane the sone, and thare levis spred, Quharwitt that al the gardinge was I cledē, That pryapus, in to his tyme before, In o lustear walkith nevir more ,	44     48   52
It was closely environed with leaves	And al about enweronyt and icloßit One sich o wyß, that none wittin supposit	

Fore to be feñ *wit*h ony vicht thare owt ,  
 So dide the levis clof it<sup>1</sup> all about 56  
 Thar was the flour, thar was the queñ alphelt,<sup>2</sup>  
*Rycht* wereng being of the *nychtis* rest,  
 Wnclofing gañe the crownel for the day ,  
 The *brycht* sone illumynit haith the spray, 60 The sun illumina  
 The *nychtis* fobur ande the most schowris, ed the sprays  
 As cristoll terys *wit*thhong vpone the flouris,  
 Haith vpwarpath In the lufy aire,  
 The morow makith soft, ameyne, and faire , 64  
 And the byrdis thar mychty voce out throng, the birds sang  
 Quhill al the wood refonnte of thar fonge, sounded  
 That gret confort till ony vicht It wer 68  
 That pleñith thame of lustenes to here  
 Bot gladnes til the thochtful, euer mo  
 The more he feith, the more he haith of wo  
 Thar was the garding *wit*h the flouris ourfret, 72 the garden was  
 Quich is in pofy fore my lady set, adorned with  
 That hire Represent to me oft befor, flowers  
 And thane also , thus al day gan be for<sup>3</sup>  
 Of thocht my goft *wit*h torment occupy,  
 That I becamē In to one exasy, 76 [Tol 2]  
 Ore flep, or how I wot , bot so befell I fell there into  
 My wo haith done my livis goft expell, an ecstasy or  
 And in fch wif weil long I can endwr, sleep  
 So me betid o wondir aventur 80  
 As I thus lay, *Rycht* to my fpreit vas feñ  
 A birde, yat was as ony lawrare greñ,  
 A licht, and fayth in to hir birdes chere , and saw in my  
 " O woful wrech, that levis in to were ' 84 dream a green  
 To schew the thus the god of loue me fent, bird, who said  
 That of thi *feruice* no thing is content,  
 For in his court yhoue lewith in diffpar,  
 And vilfully sustenis al thi care, 88 "The God of  
 Love is discon  
 tent with thee

<sup>1</sup> MS "clost "<sup>2</sup> May we read "alcest" ?<sup>3</sup> MS "befor "

	And fchapith no thinge of thine awn remede, Bot clepith ay and cryith apone dede Yhow callith the birdes be morow fro thar bouris, Yhoue devith both the erbis and the flouris, 92 And clepit hyme vnfaithful king of lowe, Yow dewith hyme in to his rigne abuse, Yhow tempith hyme, yhoue doith thi self no gud,
You are destitute of wit	Yhoue are o moñ of wit al destitute 96 Wot yhoue nocht that al lwis creatwre Haith of thi wo in to his hand the cwre?
Though you call on trees your lady hears not	And fet yhoue clep one erbis and one treis, Sche heris not thi wo, nore 3hit fche feis , 100 For none may know the durkneß of thi thocht, Ne blamyth her thi wo fche knowith nocht And It is weil accordinge It be so He suffir harme, that to redref his wo 104 Providith not , for long ore he be fonde, Holl of his leich, that fchewith not his vound
Ovid says it is better to shew, than to conceal love	And of ovid ye autor schall yhow knaw Of lufe that feth, for to consel or fchow, 108 The last he clepith althur-best of two , And that is futh, and fal be ever mo And loue also haith chargit me to fay,
[Fol 2 b]	Set yhoue prefume, ore beleif, ye affay 112 Of his feruice, as It wil ryne ore go, Prefwme It not, fore It wil not be so , Al magre thine a feruand schal yow bee
As touching thine adversity, seek the remedy	And as tueching thine aduerfyttee, 116 Compleen and sek of the ramed, the cwre, Ore, gif yhow liketh, furth thi wo endure " And, as me thocht, I anfuerde azamie
Then answered I	Thus to the byrde, in wordis fchort and plane 120 " It ganyth not, as I have harde Recorde, The feruand for to difput with ye lord ,
" Love knows the reason of my wo "	Bot well he knowith of al my vo the quhy, And in quhat wyß he hath me fet, quhar I 124

- Nore may I not, nore can I not attane,  
 Nore to hir hienes dare I not complane ”  
 “ Ful ! ” *quod* the bird, “ lat be thi nyȝ diſpare,  
 For in this erith no lady is fo fare, 128 ‘ Fool said the  
bird, despair  
not,  
 So hie eſtat, nore of fo gret empruiȝ,  
 That in hire ſelf haith viſdome ore gentrice,  
 Yf that o wicht, that worthy is to be  
 Of lovis court, ſchew til hir that he 132  
 Seruith hire in lovis hartly wyȝ,  
 That ſchall thar for hyme hating or diſpuiȝ  
 The god of love thus chargit the, at ſchort,  
 That to thi lady yhoue thi wo Report, 136 the God of Love  
charges thee to  
speak out your  
love or else to  
write thy plaint  
 Yf yhoue may not, thi plant ſchall yhov vrit  
 Se, as yhoue cane, be maner oft endit  
 In metir, quich that no man haith fuiſſpek,  
 Set oft tyme thai contenyng gret effecc, 140  
 Thus one fume wyȝ yhow ſchal thi wo dwelar  
 And, for thir ſedulis and thir billis are  
 So genei all, and ek fo ſchort at lyte,  
 And ſwme of thaim is loſt the appetit, 144  
 Sum treti ſchall yhoue for yi lady ſak,  
 That wnkouth is, als tak one hand and mak,  
 Of love, ore armys, or of ſum othir thing,  
 That may hir one to thi Remembryng brynge, 148  
 Qwich foundith Not one to no hewynes,  
 Bot one to gladneȝ and to luſteneȝ,  
 That yhoue belevis may thi lady pleaȝ,  
 To have hir thonk and be one to hir eȝ, 152 one that may  
please her and  
get her thanks  
 That ſche may wit in ſeruce yhow art one  
 Faure wel,” *quod* ſche, “ thus ſchal yhow the diſpone, Farewell and be  
merry  
 And mak thi ſelf als mery as yhoue may,  
 It helpith not thus fore to wex al way ” 156  
 Witȝ that, the bird ſche haith hir leiȝ tak,  
 For fere of quich I can onone to wak,  
 Sche was ago, and to my ſelf thoȝht I  
 Quhat may yis meyne ? quhat may this ſignify ? 160 Thereon I awoke  
and wondered  
what it might  
mean



- Is It of troucht, or of Illusioun<sup>e</sup> ?  
 Bot finaly, as in conclusioun<sup>e</sup>,  
 Be as be may, I schal me not discharge,  
 Sen It apperith be of lovis charg , 164  
 And ek myne hart none othir buffynes  
 Haith bot my ladice *seruice*, as I ges<sup>þ</sup> ,  
 Among al vtheris I schal one honde tak  
 This lital occupatioun<sup>e</sup> for hire sak 168  
 Bot hyme I pray, the mychty gode of loue,  
 That sitith hie in to his spir abuf,  
 (At *command* of o wyf quhois visoun<sup>e</sup>  
 My goft haith takin this opvnioun<sup>e</sup>,) 172  
 That my lawboure may to my lady ple<sup>þ</sup>  
 And do wnto hir ladeschip *fum es* ,  
 So that my *trauell* be *nocht* tynt, and I  
 Quhat vtheris say setith nothing by 176  
 For wel I know that, be this worldis fame,  
 It schal not be bot hurting to my name,  
 Quhen that thai here my febil negligens,  
 That empit is, and bare of eloquens, 180  
 Of discressioun<sup>e</sup>, and ek of Retoryk ,  
 The metre and the cuning both elyk  
 So fere discording frome *perfeccioun<sup>e</sup>* ,  
 Quhilk I submyt to the correccioun<sup>e</sup> 184  
 Of yam the quhich that is discret *and* wyf ,  
 And enterit is of loue in the *seruice* ,  
 [Fol 3 b ] Quhich knouyth that no lovare dare *witthistonde*,  
 Quhat loue hyme chargit he mot tak one honde, 188  
 Deith, or defam, or ony maner wo ,  
 And at this tyme *witth* me It stant rycht so,  
 As I that dar makine no demande  
 To quhat I wot It lykith loue *commande* 192  
 Tueching his chargis, as *witth* al destitut,  
*Witthan* my mynd schortly I conclud  
 For to fulfyll, for ned I mot do so  
 Thane in my *thocht* rolling to and fro 196

I determined to  
take in hand this  
occupation

I know it will but  
hurt my name  
when men hear  
my feeble negli  
gence

I submit my  
poem to the cor  
rection of the  
wise

for I dare not  
oppose I ove s  
command

- Quhare that I my~~ht~~ *fum* wnkouth mater fynde,  
 Quhill at ye laft it fell in to my mynd  
 Of o ftory, that I befor had fene,  
 That both of loue and armys can conteñ,  
 Was of o kny~~ht~~ clepit lancelet of ye laik,  
 The fone of bane was, king of albanak ,  
 Of quhois fame *and* worſchipful dedis  
 Clerkis in to druer~~ſ~~ bukis redis,  
 Of quhome I thynk her *fum* thing for to writ  
 At lous charge, and as I cane, endit ,  
 Set men tharin fal by experiens  
 Know my confait, and al my negligens  
 Bot for that ftory is fo pafing larg,  
 One to my wit It war fo gret o charg  
 For to tranſlat the romans of that kny~~ht~~ ,  
 It paſſith fare my cunyng and my mycht,  
 Myne Ignorans may It not comprehende ,  
 Quharfor thare one I wil me not depend  
 How he was borne, nor how his fader deid  
 And ek his moder, nore how he was denyed  
 Efter thare deth, preſumyng he was ded,  
 Of al ye lond, nore how he fra that ftede  
 In ſacret wy~~ſ~~ wnwyt away was tak,  
 And nwrift w~~th~~ ye lady of ye lak  
 Nor, in his ȝouth, think I not to tell  
 The auentouris, quhich to hyme befell ,  
 Nor how the lady of the laik hyme had  
 One to the court, quhare that he kny~~ht~~ was mad ,  
 None wift his nome, nore how that he was tak  
 By loue, and was Iwondit to the ſtak,  
 And throuch *and* throuch perfit to ye hart,  
 That al his tyme he cou~~th~~ It not aftart ,  
 For thare of loue he enterit in ſeruce,  
 Of wanore throuch the beute and franchis,  
 Throuch quhois ſer uice in armys he has vrocht  
 Mony wonderis, and perellis he has ſocht

At laſt I thought  
of the ſtory of  
Lancelot of the  
Lake,

200

of whom I here  
think to write  
ſomething

204

But becauſe my  
ignorance cannot  
comprehend the  
French romance

208

I ſhall not tell  
how he was born

212

nor how he was  
nourſhed by the  
Lady of the Lake

216

nor how he was  
brought to Ar  
thur s court

220

[Fol 4]

and pierced to the  
heart by the  
beauty of Wanore  
(Guinevere)

228

for whoſe ſervice  
he wrought many  
wonders ,

232

	Nor how he thor, in to his 3oung cuiage,	
nor how he made a vow to revenge a wounded knight	Hath maid awoue, and in to lous rage, In the rewenging of o wondit knyght That cumyne was in to the court that nyght,	236
who had a broken sword in his head, and a truncheon of a broken spear in his body,	In to his hed a brokin <sup>1</sup> fuerd had he, And in his body also myght men see The tronfione of o brokine sper that was, Quhich no man out dedenynt to aras ,	240
	Nor how he haith the wapnis out tak, And his awow apone this wis can mak, That he schuld hyme Reweng at his poware One euery knyght that louth the hurtare	244
	Better thane hyme, the quhich that vas Iwond Throw quch awoue in armys hath ben founde The deth of mony wereoure ful wicht, <sup>2</sup>	248
a vow which caused the death of many a wight warrior	For, fro tho wow was knowing of the knyght, Thare was ful mony o pafage in the londe By men of armys kepit to withtond This knyght, of quhome thai ben al set afyre Thaim to reweng in armys of desin	252
or how he and Sir Kay were sent to defend the lady of Nohalt,	Nor how that thane incontynent was fend He and sir kay togidder to defend The lady of nohalt, nor how that hee Gouernit hyme thare, nore in quhat degre	256
	Nor how the gret pasing vaffolag He escheuit, thrōue the outragous curag, In conqueryng of the sorowful castell.	
or how he con- quered the Sor- rowful Castle,	Nor how he passith doune in the causis fell, And furth ye keys of Inchantment brocht, That al distroyt quhich that thare vas vroccht	260
[Fol 4b] or how he resound Sir Gawane and his nine fellows,	Nore howe that he refkewit sir gawane, With his ix falous in to presone tane , Nore mony vther diuers aduenture, Quhich to report I tak not in my cwre,	264

<sup>1</sup> MS "abrokin"<sup>2</sup> The MS wrongly transposes ll 247 and 248

- Nor mony affemblay that gawane gart be maid  
 To wit *his* name, nor how that he hyme hade  
 Wnswift, and hath the worchip *and* empris,  
 Nor of the *knychts* in to mony,<sup>1</sup> diuerß wyß  
 Throuch his awoue that hath thare dethis found,  
 Nor of the sufferans that by lous wounde  
 He in his trawel sufferenth auer more,  
 Nor in the quenis *presens* how tharfor  
 By camelot, in to that gret Revare,  
 He was ner dround I wil It not declare  
 How that he was in lous hewy thoct  
 By dagenet in to the court I-brocht,  
 Nor how the *knycht* that tyme he came *perfew*,  
 Nor of the *gyants* by camelot he flew,  
 Nor wil I not her tell the *maner* how  
 He flew o *knycht*, by *natur* of his wow,  
 Off melyholt, nore how in to that toune  
 Thar came one hyme o gret confusione  
 Of pupil *and* [of] *knychts*, al enarmyt,  
 Nor how he thar haith kept hyme *wnharmyt*,  
 Nor of his worchip, nor of *his* gret prowes,  
 Nor his defens of armys in the pres  
 Nor how the lady of melyhalt yat *sche*  
 Came to the feild, and pray[i]th hyme that he  
 As to o lady to hir<sup>2</sup> his fuerd hath zold,  
 Nor how he was in to hir keping hold,  
 And mony vthr nobil deid alfo  
 I wil report quharfor I lat ourgo  
 For quho *thaim* lykith for to speeyfy,  
 Of one of *thaim* mycht mak o gret fstory,  
 Nor thing I not of his hye renown  
 My febil wit to makin menfioune,  
 Bot of the *wers* that was *scharp and* strong,  
 Richt *perellouß*, and hath enduryt long,
- 268 nor of the many  
'assemblies Ga  
wane held to find  
out his name,
- 272 nor of his suffer  
ing caused by  
love's wound
- 276 nor how he was  
nearly drowned  
at Camelot
- 280 nor how he was  
brought to court  
by Dagenet
- 284 nor of the giants  
he slew at Came-  
lot
- 288 nor how he slew  
a knight of Mely  
holt,
- 292 and there de  
fended himself  
against a crowd,
- 296 whereupon the  
lady of Melyhalt  
prayed him to  
yield his sword  
to her and kept  
him in her power
- 300 Whoever likes,  
might make of  
these things a  
long story
- But I think to  
tell of the wars  
between Arthur  
and Galahot

<sup>1</sup> We should perhaps omit "mony"

<sup>2</sup> MS "his"

[Fol 5]	Of Arthur In defending of his lond Frome galot, fone of the fair gyonde, That brocht of knyghts o paining confluens ,	
wherein Lancelot won renown by his defence of Arthur	And how lancelot of arthuris hol defens And of the veris berith the renown , And how he be the wais of fortune	304
and at last made peace between the two princes	Tuex the two princis makith the accorde, Of al there mortall weris to concorde ,	308
I shall also tell how Venus re- warded him	And how that venus, fiting hie abuf, Reuardith hyme of trauell in to loue, And makith hyme his ladice grace to have, And thankfully his seruice cane refave ,	312
My summary must end for the present	This is the mater quhich I think to tell Bot fal he mot rycht with the lady duell, Quhill tyme cum eft that we schal of hym speke This proces [now] mot clofine beñ and stek ,	316
But I pray for the support of a very great poet,	And furth I wil one to my mater go Bot first I pray, and I besek also, One to the most compilour to support, Flour of poyetis, quhois nome I wil report	320
whose name I may not men- tion	To me nor to non vthur It accordit, In to our rymyng his nam to be recordit , For sum fuld deme It of presumpfiounne,	324
for our rymyng is but derision, when his excel- lence is remem- bered	And ek our rymyng is al bot deryfiounne, Quhen that remembrit is his excellens, So hie abuf that stant in reuerans Ye fresch enditing of his laiting tounge	
The world knows his eloquence in inditing Latin,	Out throuch yis world so wid is yroung, Of eloquens, and ek of retoryk , Nor is, nor was, nore neuer berith hyme lyk,	328
and none can ever gladden the world like him	This world gladith of his fuet poetry His faul I blyf conferuyt be for-thy ,	332
to him be the thanks for my success	And yf that ony lusty terme I wryt He hath the thonk yerof, and this endit	



## [BOOK I]

- Q**uhen [that] tytan, withe his lusty heit,  
 Twenty daies In to the aryett  
 Haith maid his courß, and all with druerß hewis  
 Aparalit haith the feldis and the bewis,  
 The birdis amyð the erbis *and* the flouris,  
 And one the branchis, makyne gone thar bours,  
 And be the morow finging in ther chere  
 Welcum the luffy felfone of the 3ere  
 In to this tyme the worthi conqueroure  
 Arthure, wich had of al this worlde the floure  
 Of cheuelry auerding to his crown,  
 So pafing war his knyghtis in ienoune,  
 Was at carhill, and hapynnit fo that hee  
 Solomyt well long in that faire cuntree  
 In to whilk tyme In to the court thar heire  
 None awenture, for wich the knyghtis weire  
 Anoit all at the abiding thare  
 For-why, beholding one the fobir ayre  
 And of the tyme the pafing lufitynes,  
 Can fo thir knyghtly hartis to encreß,  
 That thei fhir kay one to the king haith fende,  
 Befeching hyme he wold wichaif to wende  
 To camelot the Cetee, whare that thei  
 Ware wont to heryng of armys day be day  
 The king forfuth, heryng thare entent,  
 To thare defir, be fchort awyfmēt,  
 Ygrantid haith, and fo the king proponit  
 And for to pas hyme one<sup>1</sup> the morne difponit  
 Bot fo befell hyme [on] that nycht to meit  
 An aperans, the wich one to his fpreit
- 336 [Fol 5 b]  
 When Titan be  
 ing in Aris had  
 apparelled the  
 fields  
 340 and birds began  
 to make their  
 bowers  
 344 king Arthur was  
 at Carlisle  
 348 His knights  
 hearing of no ad  
 venture were an  
 noyed  
 352 They therefore  
 sent Sir Kay to  
 pray the king to  
 go to Camelot  
 356 The king pro  
 posed to do so on  
 the morrow  
 360

<sup>1</sup> MS "to pas one hyme one," with first "one" lightly crossed out

- That night he  
dremt that his  
haur all fell off
- It femyth that of al his hed ye hore  
Of fallith and maid defolat , wharfore  
The king therof was pensyve in his mynd,  
That al the day he couth no resting fynde, 368
- which made him  
delay his journey
- Wich makith hyme his Iorneye to delaye  
And so befell apone the thrid day,  
The bricht fone, pasing in the west,  
Haith maid his courß, and al thing gouth to Rest, 372
- Again he dremt  
that his bowels  
fell out, and lay  
beside him  
[Fol 6]
- The king, so as the story can dewyf,  
He thoght azeine, apone the famyne wysß,  
His vombe out fallith vith his houl syde  
Apone the ground, *and* liging hyme besid , 376  
Throw wich anon out of his slep he ftert,  
Abasit and adred in to his hart
- He told the  
qusen, who an  
swered No man  
should respect  
vain dreams
- The wich be morow one to the qwen he told,  
And fhe azeine to hyme harth anfuer zolde , 380  
"To dremys, *for*, shuld no man have Respek,  
For thei ben thingis weyn, of non affek "  
"Well," *quod* the king, "god grant It so befall !"
- The king next  
shewed his dream  
to a clerk,
- Arly he roß, and gert one to hyme call 384  
O clerk, to whome that al his hewynes  
Tweching his drem shewith he expresß,
- who said Sir,  
such thinges tes  
tify nothing
- Wich anfuer yaf and seith one to the kunge ,  
"Shir, no Record lyth to such thing , 388  
Wharfor now, shir, I praye yow tak no kep,  
Nore traift in to the vanyteis of slep ,  
For thei are thingis that askith no credens,  
But causith of sum maner influens, 392  
Empriß of thoght, ore superfleuytee,  
Or than sum othir casualytee "
- "Yet," replied  
he, "I shall not  
leave it so
- "3it," *quod* the king, "I fal *nocht* leif It so ,"  
And furth he chargit mesingeris to go 396  
Throgh al his Realm, *withouten* more demande,  
And bad them stratly at thei shulde comande  
All the bißhopes, and makyng no delay  
The shuld appere be the twenty day 400

At camelot, with al thar hol clergy  
 That moſt expert war, for to certefye  
 A mater tueching to his goſt be nyght,  
 The meſag goth furth with the *lettres* Right 404

**T**he king eft ſone, *within* a litill ſpace,  
 His Iornay makith haith frome place to place,  
 Whill that he cam to camelot, and there  
 The clerkys all, as that the chargit were, 408  
 Affemblit war, and came to his prefens,  
 Of his deſir to viting the ſentens  
 To them that war to hyme moſt ſpeciall  
 Furth his entent ſhawyth he al hall, 412  
 By whos confeſ, of the worthieſt  
 He cheſith ten, yclept for the beſt,  
 And moſt expert and wiſeſt was ſuppoſit,  
 To qwhome his drem all hail he haith diſcloſſit, 416  
 The houre, the nyght, and al the *cercumſtans*,  
 Befichyne them that the ſignifycans  
 Thei wald hyme ſhaw, that he *mycht* reſting fynde  
 Of It, the wich that occupeid his mynde 420  
 And one of them with <sup>1</sup> al ther holl aſſent  
 Saith, “fhure, fore to declare our entent  
 Vpone this matere, ye wil ws delay  
 Fore to awyſing one to the ix day” 424  
 The king ther-to grantith haith, bot hee  
 In to o place, that ſtrong was and hye,  
 He cloſith them, whare thei may no whare get,  
 Vn to the day, the wich he to them ſet 428  
 Than goth the clerkys ſadly to awyſ  
 Of this mater, to ſeing in what wyſ  
 The kingys drem thei ſhal beſt ſpecefy  
 And than the maſtris of aſtronomy 432  
 The bookys longyne to ther artis ſet, <sup>2</sup>  
 Not was the bukys of arachell forget,

He goes to Camelot and finds the clerks assembled

He diſcloſes all to the ten that are moſt expert,

[Fol 6 b]

and beſeeches them to explain the dreams

One of them asks for nine days to adviſe upon the matter.

The king complies but ſhuts them up in a ſtrong place

The maſters of aſtronomy fetch their books,

<sup>1</sup> MS “saith with” (with a very ſlight ſcratch through “saith”)  
<sup>2</sup> So in MS Read “fet”



	Of nembrot, of danyholome, thei two, Of moyfes, <i>and</i> of herynes all soo ,	436
and calculate the disposition of the planets	And feking be ther calcolacioune To fynd the planetis difpoficioune, The wich thei fond ware wonder ewill yfet The famyne nyght the king his fweuen met So ner the point focht thei have the thing,	440
They found the matter heavy for the king and doubted if they should tell him so	Thei fond It wonder hewy to the king, Of wich thing thei waryng in to were To fhew the king, for dreid of his danger Of ane accorde thei planly haue propomit No worde to fhow, and fo thei them difpomit	444
Being sent for,	The day is cumyng, and he haith fore them sent, Besichyne them to fhewing ther entent	448
they all spake, Sir we can find no evidence	Than fpak they all, and that of an accorde , "Shir, of this thing we can no thing Recorde, For we can nought fynd in til our sciens Tweching this mater only ewydens "	452
"Ere we part quoth the king ye shall witness something	"Now," quod the king, "and be the glorus loide, Or we depart ye fhall fum thing recorde, So pas ye not, nor fo It fall not bee " "Than," quod the clerkis, "grant ws daus three "	456
[Fol 7] He grants them three days more	The wich he grantid them, and but delay, The term paffith, no thing wold the fay, Wharof the king ftondith heuy chenth, And to the clerkis his vifag fo apperith, That all thei dred them of the kingis myght	460
They pray for a further delay of three days	Than faith o clerk, "sir, as the thrid nyght Ye dremyt, fo [now] giffis ws delay The thrid tyme, and to the thrid day " By whilk tyme thei fundyng haith the ende Of this mater, als far as fhall depend To ther sciens , yit can thei not awyß To fhewing to the king be ony wyß	464
They still refuse to declare their thought	The day is cum, the king haith them befocht, But one no wyß thei wald declai ther thoght ,	468

- Than was he wroth in to his self and noyt,  
 And maid his wow that thei shal<sup>1</sup> ben distroyt 472 The king vows to  
 His baronis he commandit to gar tak destroy them  
 Fyve of them one to the fir-stak,  
 And vther fyue be to the gibbot tone ,  
 And the furth w<sup>et</sup>h the king's charg ar gone 476  
 He bad them in to secret wy<sup>3</sup> that thei but secretly  
 Shud do no harm, but only them affey charges his  
 The clark's, dredful of the king's Ire, knights not to  
 And saw the perell of deth and of the fyre, 480 harm them  
 Fyve, as thei can, has grantit to record ,  
 That vther herde and ben of ther accorde ,  
 And al thei ben yled one to the king,  
 And fhew hyme thus as tueching of this thing 484 They yield at last  
 "Shur, fen that we confitrenyt ar by myght and say,  
 To fhaw that wich<sup>2</sup> we know no thing aicht ,  
 For thing to cum preferuith It allan  
 To hyme the wich is euery thing certan, 488  
 Excep the thing that til our knowleg hee  
 Hath ordynat of certan for to bee ,  
 Therfor, fhir king, we your magnificens  
 Befleich It turne till ws to non offens, 492  
 Nor hald was noch<sup>t</sup> as learis, thoght It fall  
 Not in this mater, as that we telen fhall " "Hold us not as  
 And that the king hath grantit them, and thei liars though it  
 Has chargit one, that one this wi<sup>3</sup> fall feye happen not as we  
 "Presumyith, fhir, that we have fundyne so, say 496  
 All erdly honore ye nedis<sup>3</sup> moft for-go, You must forego  
 And them the wich ye moft affy in-tyll honour  
 Shal failye 3ow, magre of ther will , [Fol 7 b ]  
 And thus we haue in to this mater founde " 500 and those on  
 The king, quhois hart was al wyth dred ybownd, whom you most  
 And askit at the clerk's, if thei fynde rely will fail  
 By there clergy, that stant in ony kynde you. 504

<sup>1</sup> MS "that"      <sup>2</sup> MS "wich that"<sup>3</sup> MS "nedist," but see l 518

- The king asks if  
his destiny can  
be altered
- Of possibiltee, fore to reforme  
His destiny, that stude in such a forme,  
If in the hewyne Is preordynat  
On such o wif his honor to translat 508  
The clerkis faith, "forfuth, and we haue sene  
O thing whar of, if we the trouthe shal men,  
Is so obscure and dyrk til our clergy,  
That we wat not what It shal signefye, 512  
Wich causith ws we can It not furth fay"  
"Yis," quod the king, "as lykith yow ye may,  
For wers than this can nat be said for me"
- A master says  
there is no help  
but in the true  
watery lion, and  
in the leech and  
in the flower
- Thane faith o maufur, "than futhly thus finde we, 516  
Thar is no thing fal fucour nor reikew,  
Your worldly honore nedis most adew,  
But throuch the watrye lyone *and* ek fyne,  
On throuch the liche *and* ek the wattur fyne, 520  
And throuch the conseil of the flour, god wot  
What this shude men, for mor ther-of we not"  
No word the king ansuerd ayane,  
For al this refone thinkith bot in weyne 524  
He shawith outwart his contenans  
As he therof takith no greuans,  
But al the nyght it passid nat his thoght  
The daus cour<sup>t</sup> with ful desir he socht, 528  
And furth he goith to bring his mynd in rest  
With mony O knyght vn to the gret forest,  
The rachis gon wn-copelit for the deire,  
That in the wodis makith nois *and* cheir 532  
The knyghtis, with the grewhundis in aweit,  
Secith both the planis and the streit  
Doune goith the hart, doune goith the hynd also,  
[In to the feld can rusching to and fro]<sup>1</sup> 536  
The swift grewhund, hardy of assay,  
Befor ther hedis no thing goith away
- Next day he goes  
to the forest
- The chase

<sup>1</sup> A line must here be lost, but there is nothing to shew  
thus in the MS The inserted line is imitated from l 3298

- The king of hunting takith haith his fpoit,  
 And to his palace home he can Refort,  
 Ayan the noon , and as that he was set  
 Vith all his noble knyghtis at the met,  
 So cam ther in an agit knyght, *and* hee  
 Of gret efftat femyt for to bee ,  
 Anarmyt all, as tho It was the gyf,  
 And thus the king he saluſt, one this wiſ,  
 “**S**hir king, one to yow am y fende  
 Frome the worthieft that *in* world is kend, 548  
 That leuyth now of his tyme and age,  
 Of manhed, wiſdome, *and* of hie curag,  
 Galhot, ſone of the fare gyande ,  
 And thus, at fhort, he bidis yow your londe 552  
 Ye yald hyme our, *with*out Impedyment ,  
 Or of hyme holde, and if tribut and rent  
 This is my charge at fhort, whilk if youe left  
 For to fulfill, of al he haith conqueſt 556  
 He ſais that he moſt tendir ſhal youe hald.”  
 By fhort awys the king his anſuer yald ,  
 “Shir knyght, your lorde wondir hie pretendis,  
 When he to me ſic ſalutatioune ſendis , 560  
 For I as yit, in tymys that ar gone,  
 Held neuer lond excep of god alone,  
 Nore neuer thinkith til erthly lord to yef  
 Trybut nor rent, als long as I may lef” 564  
 “Well,” quod the knyght, “ful for repentith me ,  
 Non may recuſt the thing the wich mone bee  
 To yow, ſir king, than frome my lord am I  
 With diffyans ſent, and be this reſone why , 568  
 His purpoſe I, or this day moneth day,  
 With all his oft, planly to aſſay  
 Your lond, *with* mony manly man of were,  
 And helmyt knyghtis, both with fheld *and* ſpere , 572  
 And neuer thinkith to retwrn home whill  
 That he this lond haith conqueſt at his will ,

540 The king returns

[Fol 8]  
 As they ſit at  
 meat an aged  
 knight enters  
 fully armed

544

The knight s  
 message is that  
 king Galhot bids  
 Arthur to yield  
 to him his king  
 dom

548

552

556

The king refuses

560

564

The knight re  
 plies that his  
 lord bids him de  
 fiance and will  
 invade his land in  
 a month

568

not to return till  
 he has conquered

572

- and he intends to  
possess queen  
Vanour And ek vanour the quen, of whome that hee  
Herth report of al this world that flee 576  
In fairhed and in wertew doith excede,  
He bad me say he thinks to possede "
- Arthur returns  
his defiance " Schir," *quod* the king, " your mesag me behufis  
Of refone and of curtesy excusf, 580  
But tueching to your lord *and* to his oft,  
His powar [and] his mesag and his boft,  
That pretendith my lond for to distroy,  
Thar-of as 3it tak I non anoye , 584
- [t. ol. 8 b.] And say your lord one my behalf, when hee  
Haith tone my lond, that al the world shal see  
That It shal be magre myne entent "
- The knight de  
parts lamenting  
Arthur's adven-  
turous spirit With that the knyght, *with*outen leif, is went, 588  
And nicht as he was pasing to the dure,  
He saith, " a gode !<sup>1</sup> what wykyt aduenture  
Apperith ! " *with* that his hors he nome,  
Two knyghtis kepit, waiting his outcome 592  
The knyght is gon, the king he gan Inquere  
At gawan, and at other knyghtis sere,  
If that thei knew or euer hard recorde  
Of galiot, and wharof he wes lorde , 596  
And ther was non among his knyghtis all  
Which anfuerd o word in to the hall  
Than galygantynis of walys rafe,
- Galygantynis of  
Wales replies, That trauelet in druerf londis has, 600  
In mony knyghtly auentur haith ben ,  
And to the king he saith, " fir, I haue sen  
Galiot, which is the fareft knyght,
- that Galiot is the  
tallest knight by  
half a foot of all  
he ever saw that  
he is wise, liberal  
humble And hieft be half a fut one hycht, 604  
That euer I saw, and ek his men accordith ,  
Hyme lakid noch that to a lord recordith  
For vifare of his ag is non than hee,  
And ful of larges and humylytee , 608

<sup>1</sup> MS "agod "

- An hart he haith of páing hie curag,  
 And is not xxiiiȝ ȝer of age,  
 And of his tyme mekil haith conquerit,  
 Ten kingis at his *command* ar fterit  
 He *with* his men fo lout is, y gefȝ,  
 That hyme to pleȝ is al ther besynes  
 Not fay I this, *for*, in to ye entent  
 That he, nor none wnder the firmament,  
 Shal pouere haue ayane your maieftee,  
 And or thei fhuld, this y fey for mee,  
 Rather I fhall knyghtly in to feild  
 Refaue my deith anarmyt wnder fheld  
 This fpek y left,"—the king, ayan the morn,  
 Haith varnit huntaris baith with hund *and* horne,  
 And arly gan one to the forest ryd,  
 With mony manly knyghtis by his fid,  
 Hyme for to fport and comfort *with* the dere,  
 Set contrare was the fesone of y<sup>e</sup> yere  
 His most huntynȝ was atte wyld bore,  
 God wot a lustye cuntree was It thoore,  
 In the ilk tyme ' weil long this noble king  
 In to this lond haith maid his fuornynȝ,  
 Frome the lady was send o mesinger  
 Of melyhalt, wich faith one this maner,  
 As that the story fhewith by recorde  
 "TO yow, *for* king, as to hir foueran lorde,  
 My lady hath me chargit for to fay  
 How that your lond ftondith in affray,  
 For galot, fone of the fare gyande,  
 Enterit Is by armys in your land,  
 And fo the lond and cuntre he anoyth,  
 That quhar he goith planly he distroyth,  
 And makith al oberfand to his honde,  
 That nocht is left wnconquest in that lond,  
 Excep two castellis longynȝ to hir cwre,  
 Wich to defend the may nocht long endure
- courageous and  
under xxiv years  
of age
- 612 Ten kings obey  
him
- 616
- 620
- The king goes  
again to the  
chase
- 624
- 628 He likes boar  
hunting best  
[Fol 9]
- 632 A messenger  
comes from the  
lady of Melyhalt
- 636
- to say that Galot  
has entered Ar  
thur's land,
- 640
- and has conquer-  
ed all but two  
castles belonging  
to his mistress
- 644

- Wharfor, *fu*, in wordis plan *and* fhoit,  
 Ye mon difpone your folk for to support "
- The king promises not to delay and inquires the number of the foe  
 " Wel," *quod* the king, " one to thi lady fay  
 The neid is myne, I fall It not delay , 648  
 But what folk ar thei nemmyt for to bee,  
 That in my lond is cumyne in flich degree ? "
- A hundred thousand is the reply  
 " An hundreth thoufand both vith fheld *and* fperre  
 On hors ar armyt, al iedy for the were " 652  
 " Wel," *quod* the king, " and but delay this nycht,  
 Or than to morn as that the day is lycht,  
 I fhall remuf, ther fhall no thing me mak  
 Impedyment, my Iorney for to tak " 656  
 Than feith his knyghtis al with one affent
- His knights advise him to wait till he has raised an army  
 " Shur, that is al contrare our entent ,  
 For to your folk this mater is wnwift,  
 And ye ar here our few for to recift 660  
 3one power, and youre cuntre to defende ,  
 Tharfor abid, and for your folk ye send,  
 That lyk a king and lyk a wemour  
 Ye may futen in armys your honoure " 664  
 " Now," *quod* the king, " nq langer that I 3eme  
 My crowne, my fepture, nor my dyademe,  
 Frome that I here, ore frome I wnderstand,  
 That ther by fors be entrit in my land 668  
 Men of armys, by ftreth of vyolens,  
 If that I mak abid or refydens
- He refuses to wait longer than till the morrow  
 In to o place langar than o nycht,  
 For to defend my cuntre *and* my rycht " 672
- [Fol 9b]  
 The king that day his mefage haith furth sent  
 Throuch al his realme, and fyne to ref is went  
 Up goith the morow, wp goith the brycht day,  
 Wp goith the sone in to his fiefh aray, 676  
 Richt as he fpred his bemys frome northeft,  
 The king wpra3 withouten more areft,  
 And by his awn confel and entent  
 His Iornaye tuk at fhort awyfmnt 680
- The king arises next morning without delay,

And but dulaſ he goith frome place to place  
Whill that he cam nere whare<sup>1</sup> the lady was,

And in one plane, apone o reuer fyde,  
He lichtit doune, and ther he can abide,  
And yit with hyme to batell fore to go

684 and reaches a  
plain by the river  
side

Vij thousand fechteris war thei, *and* no mo

having only seven  
thousand with  
him

**T**his was the lady, of qwhome befor I tolde,

That lancilot haith in to hir kepinge holde, 688

Lancelot having  
been imprisoned  
by the lady of  
Melyhaht

But for to tell his pasing hewynesse,

His peyne, his forow, and his gret distresse

Of prefone and of loues gret fuppris,

It war to long to me for to dewys

692

When he remembrith one his hewy charge

Of loue, wharof he can hyme not diſcharge,

He wepith and he forowith in his chere,

And euery nyght femyth hyme o yere

696

Gret peite was the forow that he maad,

And to hyme-ſelf apone this wiſ he ſaade

laments his fate

“**Q**what haue y gult, allace<sup>1</sup> or qwhat deſeruit?

Lancelot's la-  
ment

That thus myne hart ſhal vondit ben *and* carwit

One by the ſuord of double peine and wo? 701

My comfort and my plefans is ago,

his pleasure is  
gone

To me is nat that ſhuld me glaid referuit

I curſ the tyme of myne Natiuitee,

704 he curses his  
natal day

Whar in the heuen It ordinyd was for me,

In all my lyue neuer til haue eefſ,

But for to be example of diſeſ,

And that apperith that euery vicht may see

708

Sen thelke tyme that I had fufficians

Of age, and chargit thoghtis fufferans,

Nor neuer I continewite haith o day

With out the payne of thoghtis hard aſlay,

712 he has never  
spent a single  
day free from  
anxiety

Thus goith my youth in tempeſt *and* penans

<sup>1</sup> MS “whare that,” with slight scratch through “that”



and is now in prison [Fol 10]	And now my body is In pefone broght , But of my wo, that in Regard is noght, The wich myne hart felth euer more	716
and invokes Death	O deth, allace ! whi hath yow me forbore That of remed haith the fo long befoght !"	
	Thus neueremore he felith to compleine, This woful knyght that felth not bot peine ,	720
Thus the smart of love's sorrow pricketh him	So prekith hyme the fmert of loues fore, And euey day encreffith more and more And with this lady takine is alfo,	
He is kept by her from the exercise of knighthood	And kept whar he may no whare go To haunt knychthed, the wich he moft defirt , And, thus his hart with dowbil wo yfinte,	724
and the e we let him dwell	We lat hyme duel here with the lady ftill, Whar he haith laifere for to compleine his fyll	728
Meanwhile Galiot besieged a castle	<b>A</b> nd galiot in this meyne tyme he laie By ftrong myght o caftell to affay, With many engyne and diuerß was fere, For of fute folk he had a gret powere That bowis bur, and vther Inftrumentis,	732
His army had pa- vilions tents and iron wheeled chariots	And with them lede ther palzonis <i>and</i> ther tentis, With mony o ftrong chariot and cher With yrne qwhelis and barris long <i>and</i> fquwar , Well ftuffit with al maner apparell That longith to o fege or to batell , Whar-with his oft was clofit al about,	736
	That of no ftrenth nedith hyme to dout	740
When he heard of Arthur's coming	And when he hard the cumyne of the king, And of his oft, and of his gaderyng, The wich he reput but of febil myght Ayanis hyme for to futen the ficht,	744
he assembled his council,	His confell holl affemblit he, but were, Ten knightis with other lordis fere, And told theme of the cumyng of the king, And afkit them there confell of that thung	748

Hyme thoght that it his worchip wold degrade,  
 If he hym self in *propir perfone* raide  
 Enarmyt ayane fo few menye

who thought it  
 would degrade  
 him to fight in  
 proper person  
 against so few

As It was told arthur[*as*] fore to bee , 752  
 And thane the kyng-An-hundereth-knychts cold,  
 (And fo he hot, for neuermore he wolde

Ryd of his lond, but In his cumpany  
 O hundyre knyghts ful of chiueltry) 756

He faith, "shir, ande I one hond [may] tak,  
 If It you pleß, this Iorney shal I mak "

[Fol 10 b ]  
 The king of a  
 hundred knights  
 (Malegynis) un-  
 dertakes the ex-  
 plot

Quod galiot, "I grant It yow, but ye  
 Shal first go ryd, yone knychts oft *and* see " 760

With-outen more he ridith our the plan,  
 And saw the oft and is returnyd ayañ ;  
 And callit them mo than he hade fen, for why  
 He dred the reprefe of his cumpany 764

And to his lord apone this wys faith hee,  
 " Shir, ten thoufand y ges them for to bee "

who reconnoitres  
 Arthur's host  
 and says it is  
 10 000 strong  
 whereon Galiot  
 charges him to  
 take the same  
 number

And galiot haith chargit hym to tak  
 Als fell folk, and for the feld hym mak. 768

And fo he doith and haith them wel Arayt ,  
 Apone the morne his banaris war displayt

**U**p goth the trumpetis with the clariounis,  
 Ayane the feld blawen furth ther fownis, 772

Furth goth this king *with* al his oft anon  
 Be this the word wes to king arthur gone,  
 That knew no thing, nor wift of ther entent,  
 But fone his folk ar one to armys went ,  
 But arthur by Report hard saye

Galiot's host set  
 out

How galiot non armys bur that day, 776

Arthur's host don  
 their armour

Wharfor he thoght of armys nor of fheld  
 None wald he tak, nor mak hym for the feld 780

Arthur hearing  
 that Galiot is un-  
 armed, will not  
 arm himself

But gawane haith he clepit, was hym by,  
 In qwhome Ragnith the flour of cheuelry ,

but calls Gawane  
 and tells him how  
 to order his bat-  
 talions

And told one what maner, and one what wyß  
 He fhuld his batelles ordand and dewys, 784

	Befechung hyme, [hyme] wily to for see Aȝaine thei folk, wich was far mo than hee He knew the charg and paffith one his way Furth to his horß, and makith no dulay , 788 The clariounis blew and furth goth al onon,
Gawane and his men cross over the water at the ford	And our ye watter and the furd al goñe Within o playne vpone that othei fyd Ther gawan gon his batellis to dewide, 792 As he wel couth, and set them in aray, Syne with o manly contynans can fay,
He harangues his men	“ Ye falowis wich of the round table beñ, Through al this erth whois fam is hard <i>and</i> fen, 796 Remembrith now It stondith one the poynt, For why It lyith one your speris poynt, <sup>1</sup>
[Tot 11]	The well-fare of the king and of our londe , 800 And fen the fucour lyith in your honde, And hardement is thing fhall moft awaill Frome deth ther men of armys in bataill, Lat now your manhed and your hie cuage The pryd of al thir multitude affuage , 804 Deth or defence, non other thing we wot ”
Maleginis and all his host come over the plain, and Gawane sends a company against them	This fresch king, that maleginis was hot, With al his oft he cummyne our the plañ, And gawan fend o batell hyme agañ , 808 In myde the borde, <sup>2</sup> and festint in the ftell The sperithis poynt, that bitith scharp <i>and</i> well ,
But they were all too few where- fore Gawane sends a second company	Bot al to few thei war, and mycht nocht left This gret Rout that cummyth one so fast 812 Than harth for gawan fend, them to support, One othir batell with one knyghtly sorte , And fyne the thrid, and fyne the ferde also ,
then a thrid then a fourth and then sets out himself to resist the 10,000	And fyne hyme felf one to the feld can go, 816 When that he sauch thar latter batell fter, And the ten thoufand cummyne al thei veir ,

<sup>1</sup> At the bottom of this page appears for the first time a catchword, which is—"The wel fare"      <sup>2</sup> Or "berde"

- Qwhar that of armes prewit he so well,  
 His ennemys gane his mortall [ftrokis] fell 820  
 He goith ymong them in his hie curage,  
 As he that had of knyghthed the wfage, He goes among  
 them in his  
 courage  
 And couth hyme weill *conten in* to on hour,  
 A3aine his ftrok refittit non armour, 824  
 And mony knyght, that worth ware and bolde,  
 War thore with hyme of arthur's houfhold, and many other  
 of Arthur's  
 knyghts perform  
 wonders  
 And knyghtly gan one to the feld them bere,  
 And mekl wrought of armys In to were, 828  
 Sir gawan than vpone fuch wyf hyme bure,  
 This othere goith al to difcumfitoure,  
 Sewyne thoufand fled, *and* of the feld thei go, Maleginis goeth  
 to difcomfiture  
 and 7,000 of his  
 men flee  
 Whar of this king in to his hart was wo, 832  
 For of hyme felf he was of hie curage  
 To galiot than fend he in mefag,  
 That he fhuld help his folk for to defende,  
 And he to hyme hath xxx<sup>te</sup> thousand sende, 836  
 Whar of this king gladith in his hart, Galiot sends him  
 80 000 more  
 And thinkith to Reweng all the fmart  
 That he to for hath fuffrit and the payne  
 And al his folk returnyt Is ayayne  
 Atour the feld, and cummyne thilk as haill,<sup>1</sup>  
 The fwyft horf goith firft to the affall  
 This noble knyght that feith the grete forf  
 Of armyt men, that cummyne vpone horf, 844  
 To gddir femblit al his falowfchip,  
 And thocht them at the fharp poynt to kep,  
 So that thar harm fhall be ful deir ybought  
 This vthere folk with ftraucht courf hath focht 848  
 Out of aray atour the larg felld,  
 Thar was the ftroks feftnit in the fhelde,  
 Thei war Refaut at the fper's end  
 So arthur's folk can manfully defend, 852

Arthur's folk re  
 ceive them man  
 fully,

<sup>1</sup> MS "thilk as (Rayne) haill," as if it were at first intended to find a rime to "ayayne"

	The formeſt can thar lyues end conclude, Whar ſone affemblit al the multitude Thar was defens, ther was gret affaill, Richt wonderfull and ſtrong was y <sup>e</sup> bataill,	856
but ſuſtain muca pain	Whar arthur's folk ſuftenit mekil payn, And knyghtly them defendit haith aȝaine	
and cannot en- dure againſt ſo many	Bot endur thei mycht, apone no wyſ, The multitude and ek the gret ſuppreſſ, But gawan, wich that ſetith al his payn Vpone knyghthed, defendid ſo aȝaine, That only in the manhede of this knyght His folk reloſit them of his gret myght,	860 864
	And ek abaſit hath his ennemys, For throw the feld he goith in ſuch wyſ, And in the preſſ ſo manfully them ſeruth,	
Gawane carves helmets in two, and ſmites heads off ſhoulders, 1	His fuerd atwo the helmys al to kerwith, The hedys of he be the ſhoulderis ſmat, The horſ gorth, of the maſter deſolat But what awaleth al his beſynes, So ſtrong and ſo inſufferable vas the preſſ?	868 872
but his men re- cross the ford to go to their lodges	His folk are paſſit atour the furdys ilkon, Toward ther brets and to ther luges gon, Whar he and many worthy knyght alſo Of arthur's houſ endurit mekill wo,	876
	That neuer men mar in to armys vrought Of manhed, ȝit was It al for noght	
[Fol 12.]	Thar was the ſtrength, ther was the paſing myght	
Gawane fights alone till night,	Of gawan, wich that whill the durk nyght Befor the luges faucht al hyme aloñ, When that his falowis entrit ware ilkoñ, On arthur's half war mony tan and ſlan,	880
when Gallot's folk return home	And galot's folk Is hame returnyd aȝaine, For it was laſt, away the oftis ridith, And gawan ȝit apone his horſ abidith, Wit <sup>h</sup> fuerd in hond, when thei away var gon, And ſo for wrocht hys lymmys ver ilkon,	884 888

And wondit ek his body vp and doune,  
 Vpone his horß Right thore he fel in froune ,  
 And thei hyme tuk *and* to his lugyne bare,  
 Boith king and qwen of hyme vare in difpare ,  
 For thei fuppoſit, throw marwellis that he vroght,  
 He had hyme-felf to his confufiounne broght  
 [T]his<sup>1</sup> was nere by of melyhalt, the hyll,  
 Whar lanſcelot ȝit was with the lady full  
 The knyghtis of the court [can] paſing home ,  
 This ladus knyghtis to hu palice com,  
 And told to hir, how that the feld was vent,  
 And of gawan, and of his hardyment,  
 That merwell was his manhed to behold ,  
 And fone thur tithingis to the knyght vas told,  
 That was with wo and hewyneſ oppreft ,  
 So noyith hyme his fuorne and his reft,  
 And but dulay one for o knyght he ſend,  
 That was moſt ſpeciall with the lady kend  
 He comyne, and the knyght vn to hyme ſaid,  
 “ Diſpleß yow not, *ſir*, be ȝhe not ill paid,  
 So homly thus I yow exort to go,  
 To gare my lady ſpek o word or two  
 With me, that am a carful preſonere ”<sup>2</sup>  
 “ *Sir*, your commande y ſhall, *wit*houten were,  
 Fulſill ,” and to his lady paſſit hee  
 In lawly wyß beſiching hir, that ſhe  
 Wald grant hyme to paſ at his requett,  
 Vnto hir knyght, ſtood wnder hir areft ,  
 And ſhe, that knew al gentilleß aight,  
 Furth to his chamber paſſit wight<sup>3</sup> the licht  
 And he aroß and ſaluſt Curtaſly  
 The lady, and ſaid, “ madem, her I,  
 Your preſoner, beſekith yow that ȝhe  
 Wold merſy and compaſſione have of me,

Gawane swoons  
upon his horſe

892 The king and  
queen fear he has  
brought himſelf  
to confuſion

896

900 The lady of Mely  
halt hears of Ga-  
wane s deeds  
and Lancelot  
also

904

who ſends for a  
knight to take a  
message to the  
lady

908

912

916

who comes to his  
chamber  
[Fol 12 b ]

920 Lancelot be  
ſeeches her to ap-  
point his ranſom,

<sup>1</sup> See note to this line

<sup>2</sup> MS “preſonerere”

<sup>3</sup> Read “with” (?)

And mak the ranfone wich that I may yeif,  
 I waist my tyme in presoun thus to leife 924  
 For why I her on be report be told,  
 That arthur, with the flour of his housholde,  
 Is cummyne here, and in this cuntre lyeis,  
 And stant In danger of his ennemyis, 928  
 And haith assemblit, and eft this shalt bee  
 Within thort tyme one new assemblee  
 Thar-foi, my lady, y youe grace bestich,  
 That I mycht pas, my Ranson for to fech, 932  
 Fore I p<sup>r</sup>efume thar longth to that foit  
 That loud me, and shal my nede support "  
 "Shire knyght, It stant nocht in sich dugiee,  
 "It is no ranfone wich that causith me 936  
 To holden yow, or don yow sich offens,  
 It is your gult, It is your wiolens,  
 Whar of that I desir no thing but law,  
 Witouth report your awn trespas to knaw " 940  
 "Madem, your p<sup>r</sup>cfance may ye wel fulfill  
 Of me, that am in p<sup>r</sup>efone at your will  
 Bot of that gult, I was for til excus,  
 For that I did of werrey nede behwif, 944  
 It tuechit to my honore and my fame,  
 I mycht nocht lefe It but hurting of my nam,  
 And ek the knyght was mor to blam than I  
 But ye, my lady, of your cunteffy, 948  
 Wold 3e deden my Ransoun to refaue,  
 Of p<sup>r</sup>efone fo I my libertee myght haue,  
 Y ware 3olde euermore [to be] your knyght,  
 Whill that I leif, with al my holl myght 952  
 And if so be ye lykith not to ma  
 My ranfone, [madem,] if me leif to ga  
 To the assemble, wich sal be of new,  
 And as that I am faithful knyght and trew, 956  
 At nyght to yow I enter shal azaime,  
 But if that deth or other lat certan,

presuming that  
 some of Arthurs  
 knights will pay  
 it

She replies that  
 she does not want  
 a ransom but has  
 imprisoned him  
 for his guilt

He prays for  
 pardon

and begs for  
 liberty

or at least to be  
 allowed to go to  
 the next battle,

under a promise  
 to return at  
 night

- Throw wich I [may] have such Impediment,  
 That I be hold,<sup>1</sup> magre myne entent " 960 [Fol 13]  
 "Sir knyght," quod she, "I grant yow leif, withthy  
 Your name to me that 3e wil specify " She consents, if  
 he will specify to  
 her his name  
 " Madem, as 3it, futly I ne may  
 Duclar my name, one be no maner way , 964  
 But I promyt, als fast as I haue tyme  
 Conuenient, or may with outen cryme,  
 I fhal," and than the lady saith hyme tyll,  
 "And I, fchir knyght, one this condicione will 968  
 Grant yow leue, so that ye obliſt bee  
 For to Return, as ye haue said to me " She grants him  
 leave under the  
 proposed condi  
 tion  
 Thus thei accord, the lady goith to rest,  
 The sone discending cloſt in the veſt , 972  
 The ferd day was dewyſt for to bee  
 Betuex the oſtis of the aſſemlee  
 And galiot Richt arly by the day,  
 A Ayane the feld he can his folk aray , 976  
 And fourty thouſand armyt men haith he,  
 That war not at the othr aſſemlee,  
 Commandit to the batell for to gon ,  
 "And I myſelf," quod he, "fhal me diſpone 980  
 On to the feild a3aine the thrid day ,  
 Whar of this were we fhal the end affay "  
 And arthuris folk that come one every fyd,  
 A He for the feild can them for to proude, 984  
 Wich waie to few a3aine the gret affere  
 Of galiot 3it to fuſten the were  
 The knyghtis al out of the cete roſ  
 Of melyholt, and to the ſemble gois 988  
 And the lady haith, in to ſacret wyſ,  
 Gart for hir knyght and preſoner dewyſ  
 In red al thing, that ganith for the were ,  
 His curſeir red, ſo was both ſcheld and ſpere 992

He refuſes for the  
 preſent

She grants him  
 leave under the  
 proposed condi  
 tion

Galiot aſſembles  
 40 000 freſh men

Arthur alſo pro  
 vides his men for  
 the feild

The knyghts of  
 Melyholt join  
 him

The lady ſecretly  
 provides Lance  
 lot with a red  
 courſer and a  
 ſhield and ſpear,  
 both red alſo

<sup>1</sup> MS "behold "



- And he, to qwham the priefone hath ben fmarit,  
 With glaid defir apone his curfour ftart ,  
 Towart the feld anon he gan to ryd,  
 And in o plan hount one reuer syde* 996  
*This knyght, the wich that long haith ben in cag,  
 He grew in to o frefch and new curage,  
 Seing the morow blythfull and amen,  
 The med, the Reuer, and the vodis gren,* 1000  
*The knyghtis in [ther] armys them arayinge,  
 The baneris ayaine the feld displayng,  
 His 3outh in ftrenth and in prosperytee,  
 And fyne of luft the gret aduerfytee <sup>1</sup>* 1004  
*Thus in his thocht remembryng at the laft,  
 Efterward one fyd he gan his Ey to caft,  
 Whar our a bertes <sup>2</sup> lying haith he sen  
 Out to the feld loking was the qwen ,* 1008  
*Sudandly with that his goft aftar*  
*Of loue anone haith caught hyme by the hart ,  
 Than faith he, "How long fhall It be so,  
 Loue, at yow fhall wirk me al this wo ?* 1012  
*Apone this wyß to be Infortunat,  
 Hir for to feue the wich thei no thing wate  
 What fufferance I in hir wo endure,  
 Nor of my wo, nor of myne aduenture ?* 1016  
*And I wnworthy ame for to attane  
 To hir presens, nor dare I noght complane  
 Bot, hart, fen at yow knowith fhe is here,  
 That of thi lyue and of thi deth is ftere,* 1020  
*Now is thi tyme, now help thi-felf at neid,  
 And the dewod of euery point of dred,  
 That cowardy be none In to the señ,  
 Fore and yow do, yow knowis thi payne, I weyn ,* 1024  
*Yow art wnable euer to attane  
 To hir mercy, or cum be ony mayne*
- He rides towards  
 the field and  
 halts in a plain  
 by the river side  
 Lancelot is en-  
 couraged, seeing  
 the blithe morn,  
 the mead, the  
 river the green  
 woods and the  
 knights and ban-  
 ners  
 [Fol 13 b]  
 Casting his eyes  
 aside he sees the  
 queen looking  
 over a parapet  
 Love catches him  
 by the heart  
 He counsels his  
 heart to help it-  
 self at need,  
 to forego cow-  
 ardice,

<sup>1</sup> May we read "diuerfytee"?<sup>2</sup> MS "abertes"

- Tharfor y red hir thonk at yow differue,  
 Or in hir *presens* lyk o knyght to sterf" 1028  
 With that confusit *with* an hewy tho~~ch~~t,  
 Wich ner his deith ful oft tyme haith hyme foc~~lt~~t,  
 Deuoydit was his spritis and his goft,  
 He wift not of hyme-felf nor of his oft , 1032  
 Bot one his horß, als still as ony ston  
 When that the knyghtis armyt war ilkon,  
 To warnnyng them vp goith the bludy fown,  
 And every knyght vpone his horß is bown , 1036  
 Twenty thousand armyt men of were  
 The kng that day he wold non armys bere ,  
 His batellis ware devyfit eue~~r~~ ilkon,  
 And them foibad out ou~~r~~ the furd~~s~~ to gon 1040  
 Bot frome that thei ther ennemys haith sen,  
 In to such wys thei cou~~th~~ them nocht susten ,  
 Bot ovr thei went vithouten more delay,  
 And can them one that oyer sid affay 1044  
 The red knyght still in to his hewy thought  
 Was hufyng 3it apone the furd, *and* nocht  
 Wift of hyme felf , with that a harrold com,  
 And fone the knyght he be the brydill nom, 1048  
 Saying, "awalk ! It is no tyme to flep ,  
 Your worfchup more expedient vare to kep "  
 No word he fpak, so prikith hyme the fmart  
 Of hevynes, that ftood vnto his hart 1052  
 Two fcrewis cam with that, of quhich [that] oñ  
 The knyghtis fheld ryght frome his hals haith toñ ,  
 That vthr watter takith atte laft,  
 And in the knyghtis wentail haith It caft, 1056  
 When that he felt the vatter that vas cold,  
 He wonk, and gan about hyme to behold,  
 And thinkith how he fum-quhat haith myfgoñ  
 With that his fpere In to his hand haith ton, 1060  
 Goith to the feld w~~th~~houten voidis more ,  
 So was he vare whare that there cam before,

and to deserve  
her thanks or die

Confused with a  
heavy thought

he [sits] on his  
horse as still as  
stone

The bugles are  
blown and the  
knights are ready  
on horseback  
20,000 in number

They are forbid  
den to cross the  
fords but cannot  
be restrained

[Fol 14]

The red knight  
still halting by  
the ford, a heruk  
seizes his bridle  
and bids him  
awake

Two shrews next  
approach one  
takes his shield  
off his neck  
the other casts  
water at his ven  
tayle which  
causes him to  
wink and arouse  
himself

He goes to the  
field and sees the  
first-conquest  
king

	O manly man he was in to al thing, And clepit was the ferst conquest king	1064
	The Red knyght w <sup>th</sup> [the] spurs inat the fted, The tother cam, that of hyme hath no drede ,	
They meet	With ferst curag ben the knyghtis met, The king his spere apone the knyght hath set,	1068
	That al in pecis flaw in to the felde , His hawbrek helpit, suppos he had no scheld	
The red knight though shield less, overthrows his foe	And he the king in to the scheld haith ton, That hors and man both to the erd ar gon	1072
The shrew re stores his shield	Than to the knyght he cummyth, that haith tan His fheld, to hyme delueryth It ayane,	
	Befiching hyme that of his Ignorance, That knew hyme nat, as takith no grevance	1076
	The knyght his sche[l]d but mor delay haith tak, And let hyme go, and no thing to hyme spak	
	Than thei the <sup>1</sup> wich that so at cith huth sen Ther lord, the ferst conquest king, y meß,	1080
The men of the first-conquest king come to the rescue	In haist thei cam, as that thei var agrevit, And manfully thei haith thei king Releut	
	[A]nd Arthurs folk, that lykith not to byde, In goith the spurs in the fteds syde ,	1084
[Fol 14 b]	To gddir thar affemblit al the oft At whois meting many o knyght was loft	
The battle was right cruel to be hold	The batell was richt crewell to behold, Of knyghtis wich that haith there lyvis zolde	1088
	One to the hart the spere goith throw the scheld, The knyghtis gaping lyth in the feld	
	The red knyght, byrnyng in loues fyre, Goith to o knyght, als fwift as ony vyre,	1092
	The wich he perfit throuch and throuch the hart , The spere is went , w <sup>th</sup> that anon he ftart,	
The red knight loses his spear, but draws his sword, and roams the field like a lion	And out o fuerd in to his hond he tais , Lyk to o lyone in to the feld he gas,	1096

<sup>1</sup> MS "thei," altered to "thee," which is still wrong

- In to his Rag fmytyng to and fro  
 Fro fum the arm, fro fum the nek in two,  
 Sum in the feild lying is in fwoun,  
 And sum his fuerd goyth to the belt al doune 1100  
 For qwen that he beholdith to the qwen,  
 Who had ben thore his manhed to haue sen,  
 His doing in to armys and his myght,  
 Shwld fay in world war not fuch o wight 1104  
 His faloufchip sicke comfoit of his dede  
 Haith ton, that thei ther ennemys ne dreid,  
 But can them-self ay manfoly conten  
 In to the ftour, that hard was to futen, 1108  
 For galyot was O pafing multitude  
 Of prewit men in armys that war gude,  
 The wich can *with* o frefeh curag affaill  
 Ther ennemys that day In to batell, 1112  
 That ne ware not the vorfchip *and* manhede  
 Of the red knyght, in perell and in dreid  
 Arthurs folk had ben, vith-uten vere,  
 Set thei var good, thei var of fmal powere 1116  
 And gawan, wich gart bryng hyme felf befor  
 To the bertes, set he was vondit sore,  
 Whar the qwen vas, and whar that he myght see  
 The manere of the oft and affemble, 1120  
 And when that he the gret manhed haith sen  
 Of the red knyght, he faith one to the qwen,  
 "Madem, 3one knyght in to the armys Rede,  
 Nor neuer I hard nore faw in to no fted 1124  
 O knyght, the wich that in to fhortar fpace  
 In armys haith mor forton nore mor grace,  
 Nore bettar dorth both with fper and fcheild,  
 He is the hed and comfort of our feild " 1128  
 "Now, *fir*, I traift that neuer more vas fen  
 No man in feild more knyghtly hyme *conten*,  
 I pray to hyme that euery thing hath cure,  
 Saf hyme fro deth or wykit aduenture " 1132

Some he cleaves  
to the belt

His fellows take  
comfort from his  
deeds,

though Gahot's  
host was a sur-  
passing multi-  
tude

Had it not been  
for the manhood  
of the red knight  
Arthur's folk had  
been in peril

Gawane is led to  
the parapet,

and saith to the  
queen that none  
ever did better  
than yon red  
knight

[Fol 15]

The queen prays  
for Lancelot

- The field was  
perilous on both  
sides,  
from early morn  
till the sun had  
gone down
- The feild It was *rycht* *perellus* and strong  
On both the fydis, and continewit long,  
Ay from the fone the *varldis* face gan licht  
Whill he was gone *and* *cumyne* vas the nycht , 1136  
And than o forð thei *mycht* It not aſtart,  
On *euery* fyð behout them depart
- Every knight  
then returns  
home and the red  
knight prively  
goes back to the  
city
- The feild is don and ham goith *euery* *knycht*,  
And preuayl, unwiſt of any wicht, 1140  
The way the red *knycht* to the cete tauis,  
As he had hecht, *and* in his *chambre* gais  
When arthure hard how the *knycht* Is gon,  
He blamyt fore his lordis *euerylk*-one , 1144  
And oft he haith remembrit in his thoght,  
What multitud that galhot had broght ,  
Seing his folk that ware so ewil awayt,  
In to his mynd he ſtondith al affrayt, 1148  
And faith, "I traift ful futh It ſal be founde  
My drem Richt as the *clerkis* gan expqunde ,  
For why my men ſaißeis now at neid,  
My-ſelf, my londe, in *perell* and in dreide " 1152
- ' My men now  
ſail me at need
- Galhot tells his  
counſel
- And galhot vpone hie worſchip ſet,  
And his counſell anon he gart be fet,  
To them he faith, "with arthur weil 3e ſee  
How that It ſtant, and to qwhat degre, 1156  
*Azannis* ws that he is no poware ,  
Wharfor, me think, no worſchip to ws ware  
In conqueryng of hyme, nor of his londe,  
He haith no ſtrength, he may ws not vithſtonde 1160  
Wharfor, me think It beſt is to delay,  
And reſput hyme for a tuelmoñeth day,  
Whill that he may aſſemble al his myght ,  
Than is mor worſchip *azannis* hyme to fight , " 1164  
And thus concludit thoght hyme for the beſt  
The very *knychtis* paſſing to there Reſt ,  
Of melyholt the ladeis *knychtis* ilkone  
Went home, and to hir *presens* ar thei gon , 1168
- that there is no  
honour in con-  
quering Arthur
- and proposes a  
twelvemonth s  
truce

- At qwhome ful fone than gan scho to Inquere,  
 And al the maner of the oftis till spere  
 How that It went, and in what maner wyß,  
 Who haith moft worfchip, *and* who is moft to pryß?  
 "Madem," *quod* thei, "O knyght was In the feild,  
 Of Red was al his armour and his fheld,  
 Whois manhed can al others to exceed,  
 May nan report in armys half his deid , 1176  
 Ne wor his worfchip, fhortly to conclud,  
 Our folk of help had ben al deftitud  
 He haith the thonk, the vorfchip in hyme lrys,  
 That we the feld defendit in fch wyß " 1180  
 The lady thane one to hir felf haith thocht,  
 "Whether Is þone my prafonar, ore noght?  
 The futhfaftneß that fhäl y wit onon "  
 When euery wight vn to ther Reft war gon, 1184  
 She clepith one hir cwlynes ful nere  
 Wich was to hir moft fpeciall and dere,  
 And faith to hir, "qwheyar if yone bee  
 Our prafonar, my conßell Is we see " 1188  
 With that the maden In hir hand hath ton  
 O torche, and to the ftabille ar thei gon ,  
 And fond his fted lying at the ground,  
 Wich wery was, ywet with mony wounde 1192  
 The maden faith, "vpone this horß is fen,  
 He in the place quhar strokis was hath beñ ,  
 And þhit the horß It is nochit wich that hee  
 Furth with hyme hade ,"—the lady faid, "*per* dee,  
 He vfyt haith mo horß than one or two ,  
 I led one to his armys at we go "  
 Tharwith one to his armys ar thei went ,  
 Thei fond his helm, thei fond his hawbrek rent, 1200  
 Thei fond his fheld was frufchit al to nochit ,  
 At fhort, his armour In fch wyß vas vrocht  
 In euery place, that no thing was left haill,  
 Nore neuer eft accordith to bataill 1204

The lady of Mely  
 holt asks her  
 knights who hath  
 won most honour

[Fol 10 b ]

They reply that  
 a red knight had  
 exceeded all  
 others

The lady wonders  
 if her prisoner is  
 meant

She calls her  
 cousin,

who takes a  
 torch and they  
 go to the stable

and find his steed  
 wounded.

Next they view  
 his armour

and find his hau-  
 berk rent, and his  
 shield crushed all  
 to naught

- They think he has  
well used his  
armour Than faith the lady to hir cufyneß,  
"What fal we fay, what of this mate? goß?"  
"Madem, I fay, thei have *nocht* ben abweyt,  
He that them bur fchortly he has them vifit" 1208  
"That may 3e fay, fuppos the beft that lewis,  
Or moft of worfchip in til armys prewis,  
Or 3hit haith ben in ony tyme beforñ,  
Had them in fild in his maft curag boiñ" 1212
- They next visit  
the knight him  
self "Now," quod the lady, "will we paß, and see  
The knyght hyme self, and ther the futz may we  
[Fol 18] Knew of this thing" Incontynent them<sup>1</sup> both  
Thur ladeis vn to his chambre goith 1216
- who was now  
asleep The knyght al wery fallyng was on flep,  
This maden paffith In, and takith kep  
The lady's cousin  
observes his  
breast and shoul-  
ders bloody his  
face hurt and his  
fists swollen Sche fauch his brest wíth al his fchowders bare,  
That bludy war and woundit hei and thare, 1220  
His face was al to hurt and al to fchent,  
His newis fwellyng war and al to Rent  
Sche fmylyt a lyt, and to hir lady laid,  
"It femyth weill this knyght hath ben affaid" 1224
- The lady next ob-  
serves him, The lady fauch, and rewit in hir thoght  
The knyght's worfchip wich that he haith vroght  
and is smitten to  
the heart by the  
dart of love, In hire Remembrance loues fyre dait  
With hot defyre hir fmat one to the hart, 1228  
And then a quhill, wíth outen wordes mo,  
In to hir mynd thinking to and fro,  
She ftudent fo, and at the laft abraid
- and prays her  
cousin to draw  
aside while she  
kisses the knight Out of hir thoct, and fudandly thus laid, 1232  
"With draw," quod fhe, "one fyd a lyt<sup>2</sup> the lyght,  
Oñ that I paß that I may kyß the knyght"
- Her cousin re-  
proves her, "Madem," quod fche, "what is It at 3e meñ?  
Of hie worfchip our mekill have 3e señ 1236  
So sone to be fuppreßit wíth o thoght
- lest the knight  
should awake What is It at 3he think? preßwm 3e noght  
That if yon knyght wil walkin, and perfauf,  
<sup>1</sup> "then" (?) <sup>2</sup> MS "alyt"

- He ſhal yarof no thing bot ewill confair , 1240  
 In his entent Ruput yow therby  
 The ablare to al lychtneß and foly?  
 And blam the more al vtheris in his mynd,  
 If your gret wit in ſich deſire he fynde ? ” 1244  
 “ Nay,” *quod* the lady, “ no thing may I do  
 For ſich o knyght may be defam me to ” The lady replies  
 “ Madem, I wot that for to loue yone knyght,  
 Confidir his fame, his worſchip, and his myght , 1248  
 And to begyne as worſchip wil dewyß,  
 Syne he ayaime myght lowe yow one fuch wyß,  
 And hold yow for his lady and his loue,  
 It war to yow no maner of Reprwe 1252  
 But quhat if he appetit be and thret  
 His hart to lowe, and ellis whar y fet ? What if he loves  
another ?  
 And wel y wot, madem, if It be ſo,  
 His hart hyme ſal not fuffi to loue two, 1256  
 For noble hart wil have no dowbilneß ,  
 If It be ſo, 3he tyne yowr low, I geß ,  
 Than is your ſelf, than is vour loue Refuſit,  
 Your ſam is hurt, your gladneß is conclufit 1260  
 My confell is, therefore, you to abſten  
 Whill that to yow the werray Ryght be ſen  
 Of his entent, the wich ful ſon 3he may  
 Have knowlag, If yow lykith to affay ” 1264  
 So moki to hir lady haith ſhe vroght  
 That at that tyme ſhe haith Returnyt hir thocht  
 And to hir chambre went, withouten more,  
 Whar loue of new affaith hir ful ſore 1268  
 So well long thei ſpeking of the knyght,  
 Hir cuſynace hath don al at ſhe myght  
 For to expel that thing out of hir thocht ,  
 It wil not be, hir labou Is for nocht 1272  
 Now leiſ we hir In to hir neweſt pan,  
 And to arthur we wil retwrn agai

She persuades  
the lady to return  
to her chamber  
without further  
delay

Her cousin la-  
bours to expel  
her love for I an-  
celot from her  
thoughts but her  
labour is in vain



## [BOOK II]

Night	<b>T</b> he cloudy nyght, wndu whos obscure	
	The rest and quiet of euery creature	1276
	Lyth lauf, quhare the goft <i>with</i> busynes	
	Is occupit, <i>with</i> thoghtfull hewynes,	
	And, for that thocht furth schewing vil his mycht,	
	Go fare wel rest and quiet of the nycht	1280
Arthur cannot rest	Aitur, I meyne, to whome that rest is nocht,	
	But al the nycht supprnit is with thocht,	
	In to his bed he turnyth to and fro,	
	Remembryng the apperans of his wo,	1284
	That is to say, his deith, his confusioun,	
	And of his realme the opin distrucioun	
	That in his wit he can no thing provide,	
	Bot tak his forton thar for to abyd	1288
The sun goeth up	Vp goith the son, vp goith the hot morow,	
	The thoughtful king al the nycht to sorow,	
[Fol 17]	That sauch the day, vpone his feet he start,	
Arthur goeth forth	And furth he goith, distrublit in his hart	1292
	A quhill he walkith in his penyf goft,	
He hears that a clerk has arrived,	So was he ware thar cummyne to the oft	
	O clerk, with whome he was agwynt befor,	
	In to his tyme non better was y-bore,	1296
	Of qwhois com he gretly vas Reiofit,	
	For in to hyme sum comfort he supposit,	
between whom and himself there was a hearty af- fection.	Betwex them was one hartly affeccioun	
	Non orderis had he of Relegioun,	1300
	Famous he was, and of gret excellence,	
He was expert in the seven sciences	And rycht expert in al the vij science,	
	Contemplatif and chaft in gouernance,	
and was named Amytans	And clepit was the maister amyntans	1304

The king befor his paljoune one the gren,  
 That knew hyme well, *and* haith his cummyñ señ,  
 Velcummyt hyme, and maid hyme *rycht* gud chere,  
 And he agan, agrewit as he were, 1308 Arthur welcomes him  
 Saith, "nothir of thi falofing, nor the,  
 Ne rak I *nocht*, ne charg I *nocht*," *quod* hee He recks nothing of Aithur's salutation  
 Than *quod* the king, "*maister, and* for what why  
 Ar 3e agrewit? or quhat treffpas have I 1312 The king inquires what trespass he has committed  
 Commytat, fo that I fhal yow disples?"  
 Quod he, "no thing It is ayane myñ eß,  
 But only *contrare* of thi-self alway,  
 So fare the courß yow paffith of the way 1316 He replies "It is not against me but against thy self  
 Thi schip, that goth apone the stormy vall,  
 Ney of thi careldis in the fwelf it fall,  
 Whar fhe almost is in the *perell* dreñt,  
 That is to say, yow art fo far myfwent 1320 Thy ship is almost drowned in the whirlpool  
 Of wyktnesß vpon the vrechit dans,  
 That yow art fallyng in the stornge<sup>1</sup> vengans  
 Of goddis wreth, that fhal the fon deuour,  
 For of his strok approcht now the hour 1324 That is God's wrath shall soon devour thee  
 That both thi Ringe, thi ceptre, *and* thi crowñ,  
 Frome hie estat he smyting fhal adoune  
 And that accordith well, for in thi thocht  
 Yow knawith not hyme, the wich that haith the wrocht,  
 And fet the vp in to this hie estat Because thou knowest Him not who set thee up in this high estate  
 From powert, for, as the felwyne wat,  
 It cummyth al bot only of his myght,  
 And not of the, nor of thi elderis Richt 1332  
 To the discending, as in heritage,  
 For yow was not byget in to spoufag  
 Wharfor yow aucht his biding to oberf, though not begotten in spousage  
 And at thy mycht yow fhuld hyme pleß *and* ferf, 1336 [Fol 17 b]  
 That dois yow nat, for yow art fo confuffit  
 With this fals warld, that thow haith hyme Refuffit,

<sup>1</sup> So in MS Is it necessary to alter it to "strong"?

- And brokine haith his reul and ordynans,  
 The wich to the he grve in gouernans 1340
- He made thee  
 ki g He maid the king, he maid the gouernour,  
 He maid the fo, and set in his honou  
 Of Realmys and of [duers] peplis sue,  
 Efter his loue thow shuld them Reul *and* stere, 1344  
 And wnoppressit kep in to Iustice,  
 The wyklyt men and pwnyce for thei vice  
 Yow dois no thing, bot al in the contaire,
- and thou suffer  
 est thy people to  
 sue ill And sufferth al thi puple to forsaire, 1348  
 Yow haith non Ey but one thyne awn delvt,  
 Or quhat that plesing shal thyne oppetyt  
 In the defalt of law and of Iustice,  
 Wndir thi hond is sufferyt gret suppyns 1352  
 Of fadnles, and modnles also,  
 And wedwis ek sustenit mckill wo
- The poor are op  
 pressed With gret myscheff oppressit in the pure,  
 And thow art caus of al this hol Innuce, 1356  
 Whar of that god a raknyng sal craf  
 At the, and a fore Raknyng sal hafe,  
 For thyne estat is gewyne to Redief  
 Thar ned, and kep them to rychtwyness, 1360  
 And thar is non that ther complantis heris,  
 The mychty folk, and ek the flattereris  
 Ar cheif with the, and doith this oppressioun,
- If they complain  
 is their confu  
 sion If thar complen, It is ther confussioun 1364  
 And damell faith that who doith to the pure,  
 Or faderles, or modirles, Enfure,  
 Or to the puple, that ilke to god doith hee,  
 And al this harme sustenit Is throw the 1368  
 Yow sufferth them, oppressith *and* moyith,  
 So yow art caus, throw the thei ar distroyth,  
 Than, at thi mycht, god so distroys yow
- What wilt thou  
 do when God  
 destroys sinners  
 off the visage of  
 the earth What shal he do azane? quhat shal yow, 1372  
 When he distroys by vengeance of his fued  
 The synaris fra the vysagis of the Erde?

- Than vtraly yow fhall diftroyt bee,  
 And that Richt weill apperis now of thee, 1376  
 For yow allon byleft art folitere,  
 And the wyf salamon can duclar,  
 'Wo be to hyme that is byleft alone,  
 He haith no help,' so Is thi forton goñe, 1380  
 For he is callit, with quhom that god is nocht,  
 Allone, and fo thi wykitnef haith wrocht  
 That god hyme felf he is bycumyn thi fo,  
 Thi pupleis hartis haith thow tynt also, 1384  
 Thi wykitnef thus haith the maid alon,  
 That of this erth thi fortune Is y goñ  
 Yow mone thi lyf, yow mone thi vorsechup tyne,  
 And eft to deth that neuw fhal haf fyne" 1388  
 "Master," quod he, "of yowre beneuolens  
 Y yow befech that tueching myn offens,  
 3he wald wichfarf your confell to me If  
 How I fal mend, and ek her eftur leif" 1392  
 "Now," quod the maister, "and I have merwell qwhy  
 Yow askith confail, and wil in non affy,  
 Nor wyrk thar by, and 3hit yow may In tym,  
 If yow lykith to amend the cryme" 1396  
 "3his," faith the king, "and futhfastly I will  
 3our ordynans in euery thing fulfyll"  
 "And if the list at confail to abide,  
 The remed of thi harme to prouyde— 1400  
 Firft, the begynning is of sapiens,  
 To dreid the lord and his magnificens,  
 And what thow haith in contrar hyme ofendit,  
 Whill yow haith mycht, of fre desir amend it,"<sup>1</sup> 1404  
 Repent thi gilt, repent thi gret trespass,  
 And remembir one goddis richwyfnef,  
 How for to hyme that wykitnef anoyt,  
 And how the way of fynans he diftroit, 1408

Solomon saith  
 Wo to him who  
 is left alone! He  
 hath no help  
 [Fol 18]

Thou hast lost thy  
 people's hearts

and shalt come  
 to death that hath  
 no end

Arthur asks how  
 he shall amend,

and promises to  
 fulfil his bidding

The master re-  
 plies Thou  
 must first dread  
 the Lord

Repent thy guilt

<sup>1</sup> MS "amendit"

	And if ye lyk to ryng wnde <sup>r</sup> his peß, Ye wengans of his mychty hond yow feß, This schalt yow do, if yow wil be peßfit First, mone yow be penitent and contrit 1412 Of every thing that tucchith thi consiens, Done of fre will, or 3hit of neglygens
Thy need re- quireth full con- fession	Thi neid requirith ful contretioune, Princepaly with-out conclusioun , 1416 With humble hart and gostly bysynesß, Syne shalt yow go deuotly the confess
Confess to some holy confessor	Ther of vnto sum haly confessor, That the wil consail tueching thin arou , 1420 And to fulfill his will and ordynans,
Do penance and amend all wrong	In satisfaccione and doing of penans, And to amend al wiang and al Innuie, By the ydone til every Creature , 1424
[Fol 18 b]	If yow can In to thi hart fynde, Contretioune well degeß In to thi mynd Now go thi were, for if it lesul werß, Confessioun to me, I shuld It here " 1428
Arthur tries to remember every sin done since his years of inno- cence	<b>T</b> han arthur, Richt obedient <i>and</i> mek, In to his wit memoiatyve can seik Of every gult wich that he can pens, Done frome he passith the 3eris of Innocens , 1432 And as his maister hyme commandit had,
and made his con- fession with la- mentable cheer	He gorth and his confessioun haith he maad Richt deuotly with lementable chere , 1436 The maner wich quho lykith for to here He may It fynd In to the holl romans, Of confessioun o passing <i>circumstans</i> I can It not, I am no confessor, My wyt harth ewill confat of that labou , 1440 Quharof I wot I aucht repent me fore The king wich was confessit, what is more, Gorth and til his maister tellith hee, How every fyne In to his awn degree 1444

- He shew, that mycht occuryng to his mynde  
 "Now," *quod* the maistere, "left thow aght behynde  
 Of albenak the vorfchupful king ban,  
 The wiche that was in to my seruice slan, 1448  
 And of his wif differist eft also?  
 Bot of ther sone, the wiche was them fro,  
 Ne spek<sup>1</sup> y not,"—the king in his entent  
 Abafyt was, and furthwith is he went 1452  
 Azane, and to his confessor declarith,  
 Syne to his maister he ayane Reparith,  
 To quhome he saith, "I after my cunyng  
 Your ordinans fulfillit in al thing, 1456  
 And now right hartly y besek and prey,  
 The wald withschaf sum thing to me say,  
 That may me comfort in my gret dreid,  
 And how my men ar falzet in my Neid, 1460  
 And of my dreame, the wiche that is so durk"  
 This maister saith, "and thow art bound to virk  
<sup>2</sup> **A** T my conseil, and if yow has maad 1464  
 Thi confessione, as yow before hath said,  
 And in thi consciens thinkith perseuere,  
 As I presume that thow onon shalt here  
 That god hyme self shal so for y<sup>e</sup> prouide,  
 Thow shal Remayne and In thi Ring abyde 1468  
 And why thi men ar falzet At this nede,  
 At short this is the caus, shalt yow nocht dred,  
 Fore thow to gode was frawart and perwert,  
 Thi ryngne and the he thocht for to subwart, 1472  
 And yow sal know na power may recift,  
 In contrar quhat god lykith to affi[f]t  
 The verthw nore the strenth of victory  
 It cummyth not of man, bot anerly 1476

"Leftest thou  
 aught behind  
 quoth the master  
 about Ban king  
 of Albenak and  
 his disinherited  
 wife?"

The king again  
 confesses and re-  
 turns,

prays for com-  
 fort,

and inquires  
 about his dream  
 The master saith  
 "If thou art  
 bound to work by  
 my counsel,

thou shalt abide  
 in thy kingdom  
 [Fol 19]

Strength of vic-  
 tory cometh from  
 God only

<sup>1</sup> MS apparently has "spek," but a comparison with line 1543 shews that the apparent *r* is due to the meeting of two slight flourishes belonging to the *s* and *p*

<sup>2</sup> This line (though it should not) begins with an illuminated letter

- Of hyme, the wich haith euey fainth, *and* than,  
 If that the wauis pleffit hyme of man,  
 He fhall haue forð azane his ennemys  
 A-ryght agan apone the famyne vjð, 1480
- whoso disp'eres  
 Him shall be sub  
 ject to his ene-  
 mies as we 1e id  
 in the Bible con-  
 cerning the Jews  
 If he difpleð vn to the lord, he fhall  
 Be to his fais a subiet or a thiall,  
 As that we may In to the bible red,  
 Fueching the folk he tuk hyme felf to led 1484  
 In to the lond, the wich he them byhicht  
 Ay when thei ghed in to his ways Richt,  
 Ther fois gon befor there fueid to nocht,  
 And when that thei ayanis hyme hath vrocht, 1488  
 Thei war so full of radur and diffpare,  
 That of o leif fleing in the air,  
 The found of It haith gart o thoufand tak  
 At onys apone them felf the bak, 1492  
 And al ther manhed vterly foryhet,  
 Sich dreed the lord apone ther hartis set  
 So fhalt yow know no powar may withftond,  
 Ther god hyme felf hath ton the caus on hond 1496
- Thine own of  
 fence is the rea-  
 son why thy  
 people fail thee  
 And ye quhy ftant in thyne awn offens,  
 That al thi puple falghet off defens  
 And fum ai falzeing magre ther entent,  
 Thei ar to quhom thow yewyne hath thi rent, 1500  
 Thi gret Reuard, thi riches and thi gold,  
 And cheriffith and held in thi houfhold  
 Bot the most part ar falgheit the at wyll,  
 To quhome yow haith wnkyndnes schawin till, 1504  
 Wrong and mIure, and ek defalt of law,  
 And pwnyng of qwhich that thei ftand aw,  
 And makith feruice but reward or fee,  
 Syne haith no thonk bot fremmytnes of the 1508  
 Such folk to the cummyth bot for dreed,  
 Not of fre hart the for to help at nede  
 And what awalith owthir fheld or fper,  
 Or horð or armoure according for ye were, 1512

- Vith outen man them for to ftere and led ?  
 And man, yow wot, that vantith hart is ded,  
 That in to armys feruith he of noght,  
 A coward oft ful mekil harm haith vroght 1516  
 In multitude nore ȝhit in confluens  
 Of sich, is nowther manhed nore defens  
 And so thow hath the rewlyt, that almoſt  
 Of al thi puple the hartis ben yloſt, 1520  
 And tynt richt throw thyne awn myſgouernans  
 Of auerice and of thyne errogans  
 What is o prince ? quhat is o gouernoure  
 Witouthen fame of worſchip and honour ? 1524  
 What is his mycht, ſuppos he be A lorde,  
 If that his folk ſal noch to hym accorde ?  
 May he his Rigne, may he his holl Empire  
 Suften al only of his owne defyre, 1528  
 In ferwyng of his wrechit appetit  
 Of awerice and of his awn delyt,  
 And hald his men, wneheriſt, in thraldome ?  
 Nay ! that ſhal ſone his hie eſtat conſome 1532  
 For many o knyght<sup>1</sup> therby is broght ydoun,  
 All vtraly to ther confuſioun,  
 For oft it makith vther kinges by  
 To wer on them In traſt of victory, 1536  
 And oft als throw his peple is diſtroyth,  
 That fyndith them agrewit or anoyth,  
 And god alſo oft with his awn fwerd,  
 Punyſith ther wyſis one this erd 1540  
 Thus ſalith not o king but gouernans,  
 Boith realme and he goith one to myſchans ”  
 A S thai war thus ſpeking of this thinge,  
 Frome galot cam two knyghtis to the king, 1544  
 That one the king of hundereth knyghtis was,  
 That other to nome the fyrſt conqueſt king<sup>2</sup> has,

[Fol 19 b]

and a man that  
wanteth heart is  
deadThou haſt ſo con-  
ducted thyſelf as  
to loſe all thy  
people s heartsWhat is a prince  
without honour ?Can he by him-  
ſelf ſuſtain his  
kingdom by  
ſerving his own  
appetite ?His oppreſſion of  
his people con-  
ſumes his high  
eſtate and makes  
other kings war  
on themGod alſo puniſhes  
their vicesMeanwhile the  
king of a hundred  
knights and the  
firſt-conqueſt  
king come from  
Galot,<sup>1</sup> "king" (?)<sup>2</sup> MS "kinghe," a ſpelling due to conſuſion with "knight"  
See l 1533



At first that galyot conqueint of one  
 The *newest* way one to the king thei gon, 1548  
 And vp he roß as he that wel couthe do  
 Honor, to quhome that It assentith to,  
 And zhit he wist not at thei kingis were,  
 So them<sup>1</sup> thei both and vy thei *rycht* knyghtly chei 1552  
 Reuerendly thei filuſt hyme, and thane  
 The king of hunder knyghtis he began  
 And ſaid hyme, "fir, to ȝow my lord ws ſende,  
 Gahot, whilk bad ws ſay he wende, 1556  
 That of this world the vorthieſt king wor ȝhe,  
 Greteſt of men and of awtortee  
 What of he has gret wonder that ȝhe ar  
 So ſoble cummyne In to his contrare, 1560  
 For to defend your cuntie *and* your londe,  
 And knowith well ȝhe may hyme *nocht* w<sup>it</sup>hiſtonde  
 Wharfor he thinkith no worſchip to conquere,  
 Nore in the weris more to perſyuere, 1564  
 Confidder yowr wakneß and yowr Indegens,  
 Azanis hyme as now to mak defens  
 Wharfore, my lord haith grantat by vs here  
 Trewis to yhow and reſput for o ȝhere, 1568  
 If that yhow lykith by the ȝheris ſpace  
 For to retwrn ayane In to this place,  
 Her to manteine yhour cuntre and w<sup>it</sup>hiſtond  
 Hyme with the holl power of yhour lond 1572  
 And for the tyme the trewis ſhal endure,  
 Yhour cuntre and yhour lond he will affurre,  
 And wit ȝhe zhit his powar is *nocht* here  
 And als he bad ws ſay yhow by the yhere, 1576  
 The gud knyght wich that the Red armys bure  
 And in the feild maid the diſcumfiture,  
 The whilk the flour of knyghted may be cold,  
 He thinkith hyme to haue of his houſhold " 1580

and the former  
delivers his mes-  
sage to the effect  
that

[Col 20]

Gahot wonders at  
the feebleness of  
Arthur's folk,

and is willing to  
grant a year's  
truce

if Arthur will  
return to fight  
against him in a  
year's time

and desires to  
have the red  
knight in his  
household

<sup>1</sup> "then" (?)

"Well," *quod* the king, "I have hard quhat yhe fay,  
 But if god will, and ek if that I may,  
 In to sich wyß I think for to withftond,  
 Yhour lord fhall have no powar of my londe " 1584  
 Of this meßag the king Reioßing haf,  
 And of the trewis wich that grantit was,  
 Bot anoyt ȝhit of the knyght was he,  
 Wich thei awant to have in fuch dogre 1588  
 Ther leif thei tuk, and when at thei war gon,  
<sup>1</sup> **T**his maifter faith, "how lykith god difpone "  
 Now may yhow fe *and* futh is my recorde,  
 For by hyme now is makith this accord, 1592  
 And by non vthur worldly p<sup>ro</sup>videns,  
 Sauß only grant of his bynewolans,  
 To fe if that the lykith to amend,  
 And to p<sup>ro</sup>uid thei cuntre to defend 1596  
 Wharfor yow fhalt in to thi lond home fair,  
 And gowerne the as that I fhall declare  
 Firßt, thi god with humble hart yow ferße,  
 And his comand at al thi mycht oberße, 1600  
 And fyne, lat paß the ilk bleßit wonde  
 Of lowe w<sup>ith</sup> mercy Iußtly throw thi londe,  
 And y beßeich—to quhome yow fal direke  
 The rewle vpone, the wrangis to correk— 1604  
 That yow be noch<sup>t</sup> in thi electioun blynde,  
 For writin It Is and yow fal trew It fynde  
 That, be thei for to thonk or ellis blame,  
 And towart god thi pa<sup>rt</sup> fhall be the fa<sup>m</sup>, 1608  
 Of Ignorans fhalt yow noch<sup>t</sup> be excußit,  
 Bot in ther werkis forly be accußit,  
 For thou fhuld eue<sup>r</sup> cheß apone sich wyß  
 The miñsters<sup>2</sup> that rewill haith of Iußtice — 1612  
 Firßt, that he be deßcret til wnderftond  
 And lowe and ek the mate<sup>r</sup> of the londe,

Arthur rejoices  
at the truce

which the master  
attributes to  
God's provi-  
dence and ex-  
horts him, say-  
ing

[Fol 20a]  
'First serve God  
with humble  
heart and let the  
wand of law pass  
through the land.

Thus shalt thou  
choose the minis-  
ters of justice

<sup>1</sup> The initial T is illuminated

<sup>2</sup> MS "mißters"

	And be of mycht and ek Autoritee, (For puple ay <i>contempnith</i> low degre,) 1616 And that of trouth he folow furth the way , That is als mych as he louyth trewth alway , And haith al them the wich fal pas therfro Syne, that he god dreid and lowe al so 1620
Avoid avaricious and wrathful men	Of auence be-war with the defyie, And of hyme full of haftyne <i>s</i> and fyie , Be war thar for of malice and desire, And hyme also that lowith no medyre , 1624 For al this abhominable was hold, When Iustice was in to the tymis olde For qwho that is of an of thir by-know, The lest of them subuertith all the low, 1628 And makith It w[n]Iustly <sup>1</sup> to procede , Eschew tharfor, for this fal be thi meid Apone the day when al thing goith aright, Whar none excus <sup>t</sup> hidyng schal ye lyght , 1632 But he the Iug, that no man may suffpek, Euery thing ful Iustly fal correk Be-war thar-wit <i>h</i> , as before have I told, And ches <sup>t</sup> them wyfly that thi low shal hold 1636 And als I will that it well oft be sen, Richt to thi self how thei thi low <i>conten</i> , And how the Right, and how the dom is went, For to Inquer that yow be delygent 1640
Be diligent to in quire how judg ment is gaven	[Fol 21] And puny <sup>s</sup> for, for o thing shal yow know, The most trespas is to subuert the low, So that yow be not in thar gilt accusit, And frome the froit of bliffit folk refusit 1644
Visit every chief town throughtout the bounds of thy kingdom	And pas yow shalt to euery chaf toune, Throw out the boundis of thi Regioun Whar yow fall be, that Iustice be Elyk With-out diuisione bath to pur and ryk 1648

<sup>1</sup> MS "w Iustly "

- And that thi puple have [ane] awdiens  
 With thar complantis, and also thi presens,  
 For qwho his eris frome the puple stekith,  
 And not his hond in ther support furth rekith, 1652  
 His dom fall be ful grewous & ful hard,  
 When he sal cry and he sal nochit be hard  
 Wharfor thyne eris ifith to the pwre,  
 Dot in redress of ned, & not of mIure, 1656  
 Thus fall thei don of Resfone & knowlag  
**B**ut kingis when thei ben of tender ag,  
 Y wil not say I traft thei ben excusit,  
 Bot schortly thei fall be far accusit, 1660  
 When so thei cum to yheris of Resfone,  
 If thei tak not full contritioun,  
 And pwnyſ them that hath ther low myfgyt  
 That this is trouth it may not be denyit, 1664  
 For vthei ways thei fal them not discharg,  
 [Excep thei pwnyſ them that have the charg]<sup>1</sup>  
 One estatys of ther realm, that fhold  
 With in his ȝouth se that his low be hold <sup>2</sup> 1668  
 And thus thow the, with mercy, kep alway  
 Of Iustice furt/ the ilk bleffit way  
 Tempel justice  
 with mercv  
**A**nd of thi wordis beis trew and stable,  
 Spek not to mych, nore be not vareable 1672  
 O kingis word fhold be o kingis bonde,  
 And said It is, a kingis word fhold stond ,  
 O kingis word, among our faderis old,  
 Al out more precious & more fur was hold 1676  
 Than was the eth or feel of any wight ,  
 O king of trouth fuld be the werray lyght,  
 So treuth and Iustice to o king accordyth  
 And als, as thir clerkis old recordith, 1680  
 A king should be  
 the very light of  
 truth.

<sup>3</sup> **I**n tyme is larges and humiltee  
 Right well according vnto his dugre,

<sup>1</sup> A blank space here occurs, just sufficient to contain one line

<sup>2</sup> MS "behold"

<sup>3</sup> The initial I is illuminated, rather because there is here a change of subject than because it begins a new sentence

	And pleffith boith to god and man al so ,	
[Fol 21 b]	Wharfor I wil, <i>incontinent</i> thow go,	1684
	And of thi lond in euery <i>part</i> abide,	
	Whar yow gar fet and clep one <i>euery</i> fid	
	Out of thi cuntieis, and ek out of thi tovnis,	
Invite thy dukes, earls great barons	Thi dukis, erlis, and thi gret baronis,	1688
thy poor knights and thy bache lors and welcome them severally	Thi pur <i>knychts</i> , and thi bach[er]is,	
	And them refauf als hastily as afferis,	
	And be them-felf yow welcum them ilkon	
	Syne, them to glaid and cheris, thee dispone	1692
	With fefting and with humyll <i>contynans</i>	
	Be not penfyve, nore proud in arrogans,	
Keep company not with the rich man only but with the poor worthy man also	Bot <i>wit</i> them hold in gladnes cumpany ,	
	Not with the Rich nor myghty anely,	1696
	Bot with the pure worthi man also,	
	Wit them thow fit, <i>wit</i> them yow 1yd and go	
	I fay not to be ou fameliar,	
	For, as the most philofephur can duclar,	1700
Yet remember that familiarity breeds contempt	To mych to oys familiaritee	
	Contempnyng byngith one to hie dugre ,	
	Bot chence them <i>wit</i> wordis fan depaynt,	
	So with thi pupelle fal yow the aquaynt	1704
Choose out of each district an aged knight to be thy counsellor	Than of ilk cuntie wyfly yow enquere	
	An agit <i>knycht</i> to be thi confulere,	
	That haith ben hold in armys Richt famus,	
	Wyð and discret, & no thing Inwyus ,	1708
	For there is non that knowith fo wel, I-wyð	
	O worthy man as he that worthi Is	
When thou hast sojourned long in a place then pro- vide thee with plenty of horses armour gold sil- ver and cloth- ing	When well long haith yow fwiornyt in a place,	
	And well acqueynt the <i>wit</i> thi puple has,	1712
	Than fhalt thow ordand & prowid the	
	Of hors and ek of armour gret plente ,	
	Of gold, and filuer, tressore, and cleithing,	
	And euery Riches that longith to o king ,	1716
and, before leav- ing distribute gifte liberally	And when the lykith for to tak thi leif,	
	By larges thus yow thi reward geif,	

- First to the pure worthy honorable,  
 That is til armys and til manhed able , 1720  
 (Set he be pur, ȝhit worſchip in hyme biðith) ,  
 If hyme the horſ one wich thi felwyne Riðith,  
 And bið hyme that he Rið hyme for yhour fak ,  
 Syne til hyme gold and filuer yow betak , 1724  
 The horſ to hyme for worſchip and prowes,  
 The trefor for his fredome and laiges  
 If moſt of Riches and of Cherrifing ,  
 Eftur this gud knyȝt berith vitneſing 1728  
 Syne to thi tennandis & to thi wawafouris  
 If effy haknays, palfras, and curfours,  
 And robis ſich as pleſand ben and fair ,  
 Syne to thi lordis, wich at myȝhty are, 1732  
 As dukis, erlis, princis, and ek kingis,  
 Yow if them ſtrang, yow if them vncouth thingis,  
 As diuerſ iowellis, and ek preciouſ ſtonis,  
 Oȝ halkis, hundis, ordinit for the nomis, 1736  
 Or wantone horſ that can nochȝt ſtand in ftable ,  
 Thar giftis mot be fair and delitable  
 Thus, firſt vn to the vorthu pur yow if  
 Giftis, that may ther pouerte Releif , 1740  
 And to the rich iſtis of pleſans,  
 That thei be fair, ſet nochȝt of gret ſubſtans ,  
 For riches aſkith no thing bot delyt,  
 And powert haith ay ane appetyt 1744  
 For to ſupport ther ned and Indigens  
 Thus ſhall yow if and makith thi diſpens  
 And ek the quen, my lady, ſhalt alſo  
 To madenis and to ladeis, quhai ȝhe go, 1748  
 If, and cherrſ one the ſamyne wyſ ,  
 For in to largeſ al thi welſar lȝis  
 And if thy giftis with ſich continans  
 That thei be ſen ay gifyne vith pleſans , 1752  
 The wyſ man ſais, and ſuth it is approuȝt,  
 Thar is no thonk, thar is no iſt alowit,

Give to the poor  
 worthy man the  
 horse thou thy  
 self ridest

[Fol 22a]

Give to thy ten  
 ants and vava  
 sours easy hack  
 neys paltries and  
 coursers

Give to thy lords  
 things strange  
 and uncouth

So too shall the  
 queen give to  
 maidens and la  
 dies,

for all thy welfare  
 lies in liberality



- For al thi Realmys and thi gret Riches,  
 If that yow lak of worchip the encref?  
 Well leß, al-out, for efter thar eftate  
 Ther have vorchip, and kepith It al gat, 1792  
 And yow degradith al thyne hie dugree,  
 That fo schuld fhyne In to nobeltee,  
 Throuch wys and throw the wrechitnes of hart  
 And knowis yow not what fall be<sup>1</sup> thi part, 1796  
 Out of this world when yow fal paß the courß?  
 Fair well, I-wyß<sup>1</sup> yow neuer fshall Recourß  
 Whar no prince more fshall the subiet<sup>2</sup> have,  
 But be als dep in to the erd y grave, 1800  
 Sauß vertew only and worchip wich abidith,  
 Witß them the world apone the laif dewidith,  
 And if he, wich fshal eftur the fucced,  
 By larges fpend, of quich that yhow had dreid, 1804  
 He of the world comendit is and profit,  
 And yow ftant furth of euery thing difputit,  
 The puple faith and demyth thus of thee,  
 "Now is he gone, a werray vrech was hee, 1808  
 And he the wich that is our king and lord  
 Both wertew haith & larges in accorde,  
 Welcum be he!" and fo the puple foundith  
 Thus through thi viß his wertew mor aboundith, 1812  
 And his wertew the more thi wice furth fchawith  
 Wharfor zhe, wich that princes ben y knawith,  
 Lat not yhour vrechit hart so yhow dant,  
 That he that cummyth next yhow may awant 1816  
 To be mor larg, nore more to be commendit,  
 Best kept Is the Riches well difpendit  
 O zhe, the wich that kinges ben, fore fham  
 Remembrith yhow, this world hath bot o naaß 1820  
 Of good or ewill, efter zhe ar gone<sup>1</sup>  
 And wyßly tharfor cheffith yhow the toß

Knowest thou  
 not what shall be  
 thy part when  
 thou passest  
 away from this  
 world?

Virtue and hon  
 our will alone re-  
 main

And if thy suc  
 cessor be liberal  
 he will be com  
 mended of the  
 world

[Fol 23 a.]

and his virtue will  
 abound through  
 thy vice

Riches well spent  
 are the best kept

<sup>1</sup> MS has "by"

<sup>2</sup> MS has "subiet"



	Wich moft accordith to nobilitee, And knytith larges to yhour hie degre For qwhar that fredome In O prince Ringnis, It bryngith In the victory of kingis, And makith realmys and puple both to dout, And fubectis <sup>1</sup> of the cuntie al about	1824     1828
Whoso will be a conqueror let him not reek to give largely	And qwho that thinkith ben o conquerour, Suppos his largeß fumquhat pas myfour, Ne rak he nat, bot frely iffith ay, And as he wynyth, beis var al way To mych nor 3hit to gudy that he hold, Wich fal the hartis of the puple colde	   1832
Both love and fear spring from liberality	And low and radour cummyth both two Of larges, Reid and 3he fal fynd It fo Alexander this lord the waird that wan, First wth the fucid of larges he began,	  1836
Alexander gave so liberally,	And as he wynith iffith lugely, He rakith No thing bot of chcuehy, Wharfor of hyme fo paffith the Renown,	  1840
that many cities desired to have such a lord,	That many o cetee, and many o strang towñ Of his worfchip that herith the Recorde, Duffinith fo to haveing fich o lorde,	  1844
and offered them selves peaceably to him, though they weis manly men of war	And offerith them wth outen ftrok of fpere, Suppos that thei war manly men of were, But only for his gentilleß that thei Have hard, and fo he lout was al-way For his larges, humiltee, and manhed, Wth his awn folk, that neuer more, we Reid,	   1848
[Fol 23 b]	For al his weris nor his gret trawell, In al his tym that thei hyme onys faili, Bot in his worfchip al thar befynes Thei fet, and lewith in to no diftres, Whar throw the fuerd of victory he berith	   1852
Many princes bear the palm of	And many prince full oft the palm werth,	1856

<sup>1</sup> Or "subectis"

As has ben hard, by larges, of before,		victory through liberality
In conqueringe of Ragnis & of glore		
And wrechitnes Richt fo, in the contrar,		
Haith Realmys maid ful defolat & bare,	1860	while miserliness hath made realms desolate
And kingis broght doun from ful hie estat,		
And who that Red ther old bukis, wat		
The viciis lef, the wertew have in mynde,		
And takith larges In his awn kynd,	1864	
A myd ftanding of the viciis two,		Choose the mean between. prodigality and avarice
Prodegaltee and awerice also		
Wharfor her-of It nedith not to more,		
So mych ther-of haith clerkis vrit to-fore	1868	
Bot who the wertw of larges & the law		Whoso chooses to be liberal
Sal cheif, mot ned confidir well & knaw		
In to hyme-felf, and thir thre wnderftande,		
The fubstans first, the powar of his land,	1872	must understand three things the amount he has to whom he giveth and the fit time for giving
Whome to he iffith, and the caus wharfore,		
The nedful tyme awatith euermore		
Kepith thir thre, for qwho that fal exced		
His rent, he fallith fodandly in nede	1876	
And fo the king, that on to myfter drowis,		(1) The king that becomes indigent overthrows his subjects
His subiettes and his puple he our-thrawis,		
And them difpolzerth both of lond and Rent,		
So is the king, fo is the puple schent	1880	
For-quh the voice It ferik[i]th vp ful ewyne		For the voice of the oppressed shrekeeth up censelessly to heaven
Wit/out abaid, and passith to the hewyne,		
Whar god hyme felf refawth ther the crye		
Of the opprefioun and the teranny,	1884	
And with the fuerd of wengans doun y fmytith,		and God smiteth down with the sword of ven- geance
The wich that caruith al to for, and bitith,		
And hyme diftroyth, as has ben hard or this		
Of euery king that wirkith sich o mys	1888	
For ther is few efchapith them, It fall		
Boith vpone hyme & his fuceffione fall,		
For he forfuth haith ifyne hyme the wond		For God hath given the king the wand of jus- tice
To Iustefy and Reull in pece his lond,	1892	[Fol 24 a]

	The puple all submytit to his cure , And he aȝan one to no creatur Save only fhall vn to his gode obey And if he priffith fo fu out of the wey,	1896
and if he op- presses them whom he should ru e	Them to oppreß, that he fhuld reul & gid, Ther heritag, there gwdis to dewide, Ye, vnder whome that he moft nedis ftond,	
God shall stretch His mighty hand for correction	At correccioune fal frek his myghty hond, Not every day, bot fhal it onys fall On hyme, mayhap, and his fuccedione all	1900
Herein, alas ! is the blindness of kinges	In this, allace ! the blyndis of the kinges, And Is the fall of princis and of Rygnis The moft wertew, the gret Intellegens,	1904
The blessed token of a kinges wis dom is for him to se train his hand from his people s riches	The blest tokyne of wyfdom and prudens Ifß, in o king, for to refiren his honde Frome his pupleis Riches & thei lond Mot every king have this wice in mynd In tyme, and not when that he ned fynde ! And in thi larges berth war, I pry,	1908
(?) Choose a fit ting tyme (*) Take care to whom you give	Of nedful tyme, for than is best alway Awys the ek quhome to that thow falt if, Of there fam, and ek how that thei leif ,	1912
Let not the vir- tuous and the vicious stand in the same degree	And of the wertws and vicious folk also, I the befeich dewidith well thr two, So that thei ftond nocht in[to] o degree , Discreccioune fall mak the diuerfitee, Wich clepith the moder of al vertewis	1916
Beware of flat- tery	And berth war, I the befeich of this, That is to fay of flatry, wich that longith To court, and al the kinges larges fongith The vertuous man no thing thar of refaunth, The flattereris now fo the king disfaunth	1920
	And blyndith them that wot no thing, I wysß, When thei do well, or quhen thei do o mysß , And latith kinges oft til wnderftonde That viciis, and ek ye faltis of ther lond	1924
		1928



- That no trefpaß, that cummyth in his way,  
 Shuld paß his hond wne pwnift away ,  
 Nore no good deid in to the samyn degree,  
 Nore no wertew, fuld wn Reuaidid bee 1968
- Then flattery,  
 that now is high,  
 should be low
- Than flattry fhuld, that now is he, be low,  
 And wice from the kingis court with drow ,  
 His munifters that fhuld the Iuftice reull,  
 Shuld kep well furt<sup>h</sup> of quiet & reull, 1972
- [Fol 25 a ]
- That now, god wat, as It conferwit Is,  
 The ftere is loft, and al is gon amys ,  
 And vertew fhuld hame to the court hyme drefß,  
 That exillth gorth in to the wildernes 1976
- If a king thus  
 stood like his own  
 degree his people  
 would be virtu  
 ous and wise
- Thus if o king ftud lyk his awn degree,  
 Wertwis and wyß than fhuld his puple bee,  
 Only fet by vertew hyme to pleß,  
 And fore adred his wißdom to difpleß 1980
- And if that he towart the vicis draw,  
 His folk fall go on to that ilk law ,  
 What fhall hyme pleß that wil nou<sup>t</sup> ellis fynd,  
 Bot ther apon fetith al ther mynde 1984
- Thus the rule of  
 his people and  
 kingdom stand  
 erli only in the  
 king s virtue
- Thus only in the wertew of o king  
 The reull ftant of his puple & his ungne,  
 If he be wyß and, but diffemblyng, fehewis,  
 As I have laid, the vicis one to fehrewis 1988
- And fo thus, fir, It ftant apone thi will  
 For to omend thi puple, or to fpill ,  
 Or have thi court of vertewis folk, or fullis ,  
 Sen yow art holl maifter of the feoullis 1992
- Since thou art  
 wholly maister of  
 the schools teach  
 them and they  
 shall gladly  
 learn
- Teichith them, and thei fal gladly leir,  
 That is to fay, that thei may no thing heir<sup>1</sup>  
 Sauß only wertew towart thyn eftat ,  
 And cherrß them that wertews ben algat 1996
- And thinkith what that wertew is to thee ,  
 It pleßith god, vphaldith thi degree "

<sup>1</sup> Or, "leir," MS apparently has "leir," corrected to "leir "

- "Maister," quod he, "me think ryght profitable  
 Yowr confeeell Is, and wonder honorable 2000 Arthur considers  
his counsel pro-  
fitable  
 For me, and good, ryght well I have confaut,  
 And in myne hartis Inwartneß refaut  
 I fhall fulfill and do yowr ordynans  
 Als far of wit as I have fuffifans, 2004  
 Bot y befeich yow, in til hartly wyß,  
 That of my drem þhe fo to me dewyß,  
 The wich fo long haith occupaid my mynd,  
 How that I fhall no maner fucour fynd 2008 He beseeches him  
to expound his  
drem  
how he shall only  
find help through  
the water lion,  
the leech and the  
flower  
 Bot only throw the watter lyon, & fyne  
 The leich that is wuthouten medyfyne,  
 And of the confell of the flour, wich ayre  
 Wonderis lyk that no man can duclar 2012  
 "Now, fir," quod he, "and I of them al thre,  
 What thei betakyne fhall I fchaw to the,  
 Such as the clerkis at them fpecifit,  
 Thei vrit no thing what thei fignefit 2016 The mastei s ex-  
planation  
[Fol 20 b]  
The water lion is  
the very God  
 The watter lyone Is the god wernay,  
 God to the lyone is lyknyt many way,  
 But thei have hyme In to the watter feñ,  
 Confufit were ther wittis al, y weñ, 2020  
 The watter was ther awn frageltee,  
 And thar treifpas, and thar Inequitee  
 In to this world, the wich thei ftond y-clofit,  
 That was the watter wich thei have fupposit, 2024  
 That haith there knowlag maad fo Inperfyt,  
 Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,  
 As clowdy watter, was euermore betweñ,  
 That thei the lyone perfytly hath nocht feñ, 2028 whereby they see  
not the lion per-  
fectly  
 Bot as the watter, wich was yer awn fyne,  
 That euermor thei ftond confufit In  
 If thei haith ftond in to religioñ clen,  
 Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen, 2032 Had men been  
always reli-  
gious  
they had seen the  
lion not in water,  
but clearly  
 Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abus,  
 Eternaly whar he fhall not remufe

- And eue~~r~~more in vatte~~r~~ of fyne vas hee  
 For quh~~i~~ It is Imposseble for to bee,<sup>1</sup> 2036
- The world is en  
 closed in the  
 darkness of their  
 sin And thus the world, wich that thei ar In,  
 Y clofit Is in dyrknes of thei fyne,  
 And ek the thikne~~s~~ of the ai~~r~~ betwen  
 The lyone mad in vattu~~n~~ to be fen 2040  
 For It was noc~~h~~t bot strent~~h~~ of ther clergy  
 Wich thei have here, and It is bot ert~~h~~ly,  
 That makith them there icsouns dewy~~s~~,  
 And fe the lyone thus in ert~~h~~ly wy~~s~~ 2044
- The lion is God s  
 Son Jesu Christ This is the lyone, god, and goddis sone,  
 Ihesu crist, wich ay in hewyne fal wonne  
 For as the lyone of euery best is king,  
 So is he lord and maister of al thing, 2048  
 That of the bleffit vyrgyne vas y-boie  
 Ful many a natur the lyone haith, quhar-foie  
 That he to god refemblyt is, bot I  
 Lyk not mo at this tyme specify 2052  
 This is the lyone, thar-of have yow no dred,  
 That shal the help and comfort In thi ned  
**T**he sentens here now woll I the defyne  
 Of hyme, the lech wit~~h~~outen medyfyne, 2056  
 Wich is the god that euery thing hath vioght  
 For yow may know that vther Is It noght,  
 As surgynis and fescianis, wich that delith  
 Wit~~h~~ mortell thing~~s~~, and mortell thing~~s~~ helyth, 2060  
 And al thar art is in to medyfyne,  
 As it is ordant be the mycht dewyne,  
 As plaste~~r~~is, drink~~s~~, and anouyntment~~s~~<sup>2</sup> feir,  
 And of the qualyte watyng of the yher, 2064  
 And of the planet~~s~~ disp~~o~~sicioune,  
 And of the naturis of compleccyoun~~e~~,  
 And in the diuer~~s~~ changing of hwmowr~~s~~  
 Thus wnder reull lyth al there cwr~~s~~, 2068
- The leech with  
 out medicine is  
 also God [FoL 28 a ]  
 Not as surgeons,  
 whose art is in  
 medicine  
 and in plaisters,  
 drinks and vari  
 ous ointments  
 who know the  
 quality of the  
 year and the dis  
 position of the  
 planets

<sup>1</sup> "see" (?)<sup>2</sup> MS "anoñytmētis," or "anoñytmētis"

- And yhit thei far as blynd man In the way,  
 Oft quhen that deith thar craft lft to affay  
 Bot god, the wich that is the foueran lech,  
 Nedith no maner medyfyne to fech , 2072  
 For ther is no Infyrmyte, nore wound,  
 Bot as hyme lykith al is holl and found  
 So can he heill Infyrmytee of thoght,  
 Wich that one erdly medefyne can noght, 2076  
 And als the faul that to confusioune goith,  
 And haith with hyme and vther *partes* both,  
 His dedly wound god helyth fiome the ground ,  
 On to his cure no medyfyne is found 2080  
 This Is his *mycht* that neuer more fihall fyne,  
 This is the leich *wit*houten medyfyne ,  
 And If that yhow at confessioune hath ben  
 And makith the of al thi *fynnis* clen, 2084  
 Yow art than holl, and this ilk famyn is he  
 Schall be thi leich In al neceffitee  
 Now of the flour y woll to the discern  
 This is the flour that haith<sup>1</sup> the froyt etern, 2088  
 This is the flour, this fadith for no schour,  
 This is the flour of euery flouis floure ,  
 This is the flour, of quhom the froyt vas born,  
 This ws redemyt efter that we war lorn , 2092  
 This Is the flour that euer spryngith new,  
 This is the flour that changith neuer hew ,  
 This is the vyrgyne, this is the bleffit flour  
 That Ihesu bur that is our salweour, 2096  
 This flour *wnwemmyt* of hir wurginitee ,  
 This is the flour of our felicitee,  
 This is the flour to quhom ve fihuld exort,  
 This is the flour not fessith to fupport 2100  
 In prayere, confell, and in byffynes,  
 Vs catifis ay In to our wrechitnes

But God can heal  
 infirmity of  
 thought,

and also the soul  
 that goeth to con-  
 fusion

He shall be thy  
 leech in all neces-  
 sity

The flower is she  
 of whom the  
 eternal fruit was  
 born,

the virgin that  
 bore the Saviour,

that ceaseth not  
 to support us  
 catifis

[Fol 26 b]

<sup>1</sup> The word, though indistinct, is almost certainly "huth" Stevenson has "high," but this gives no sense



- On to hur sone, the quich hur counsell herith,  
 This is the flour that al our gladnesf stenth, 2104  
 Throuch whois prayer mony one is sawit  
 That to the deth eternaly war rclawit,  
 Ne wai hur hartly fuplicatione  
 This is the flour of our saluatioune, 2108  
 Next hur sone, the floyt of euery flour,  
 This is the sam thrt fhal be thi succour,  
 If that the lykith hartly Reueians  
 And seruice zeld one to hur excellens, 2112  
 Syne worfchip hur with al thi byffynesf,  
 Sche sal thi harm, sche fall thi ned rediesf  
 Sche fall fice counsell if one to the two,  
 The lyone and the fouerane lech also, 2116  
 Yow fall not Ned yi drem for to dispai,  
 Nor zut no thing that is in thi contrare  
 Now—quod the maister—yow may well wnderstand  
 Tueching thi drem as I have born on hande, 2120  
 And planly haith the mater al declarith,  
 That yhow may know of wich yow was disparith  
 The lech, the lyone, and the flour also,  
 Yow worfchip them, yow serue them euermo, 2124  
 And ples the world as I have said befoie,  
 In gouernans thus stondith al thi gloie  
 Do as yow list, for al is in thi honde,  
 To tyne thi-self, thi honore, and thi londe, 2128  
 Or lyk o prnce, o conquerour, or king,  
 In honore and in worfchip for to Range ”  
 The king replies “ Now,” quod the king, “ I fell that the support  
 Of yhour counsell haith don me fisch comfort, 2132  
 Of euery raddour my hart is In to esf,  
 To zhour command, god will, y fal obeff  
 Bot o thing is yneuch wn to me,  
 How galiot makith his awant that he 2136  
 Shall have the knyght, that only by his honde  
 And manhed, was defendour of my londe ,

through whose  
prayer are many  
saved

She shall so  
counsel the lion  
and the leech  
that thou need  
not despair

Do now as thou  
list, for all is in  
thy hand.

The king replies

that his heart is  
eased from fear,

but inquires if  
Galiot will win  
over the red  
knight and what  
is his name

- If that ffall fall y pray yhow tellith me,  
 And quhat he hecht, and of quhat lond is hee?" 2140  
 "What that he hecht yow ffall no forye<sup>r</sup> know,  
 His dedis fall her-afterwart hyme fchaw , The master  
evades reply  
 Bot *contrar* the he ffall be found no way  
 No more thar of as now y will the fay " <sup>1</sup> 2144  
 With that the king haith at his maistr tone [Fol 27 a ]  
 His leve, one to to his cuntre for to goñe , The king and the  
host return home  
 And al the oft makith none abyde,  
 To passing home anone thei can prowid , 2148  
 And to fir gawane thei haith o lytter maad,  
 Ful fore ywound, and hyme on with them haade  
 [T]he king, as that the ftoiy can declar,  
 Passith to o Cete that was Right fair, 2152 The king sojourns  
twenty four days  
at Cardole in  
Wales  
 And clept cardole, In to wals, was,  
 For that tyme than It was the neresst place,  
 And thar he forornyt xxiiij<sup>ti</sup> days  
 In ryall festung, as the auttore fays 2156  
 So discretly his puple he haith cherit,  
 That he thar hartis holy haith *conquerit*  
 And fir gawan, helyt holl and found  
 Be xv dais he was of euery wounde , 2160 Sir Gawan is  
healed in fifteen  
days  
 Right blyth therof in to the court war thei  
 And so befell, the xxiiij<sup>2</sup> day,  
 The king to fall in to o hewynes,  
 Right ate his table siting at the mes<sup>s</sup> , 2164 The king becomes  
mournful as he  
sits at the mess  
 And fir gawan cummyth hyme before,  
 And said hyme, "fi, yhour thoght is al to foie,  
 Confidering the diuers<sup>3</sup> knyghtis fere  
 Ar of wncouth and strang landis here" 2168 Gawan rebukes  
him  
 The king anfuert, as in to matalent,  
 "Sir, of my thocht, or 3hit of myne entent,  
 Yhe have the wrang me to repref, for quhy  
 Thai lewith none that fould me blam, for I 2172 The king answers  
in ' matalent

<sup>1</sup> At the bottom of the page is the catch word, "With that the king"  
<sup>2</sup> Ms "xxviiij," altered to "xxiiij"

- that he was  
 thinking of the  
 worthiest knight  
 living
- Was thinkand one the worthiest that lewyte,  
 That al the worship In to armys prewyte,  
 And how the thonk of my defens he had,  
 And of the vow that gahot haith mad 2176  
 But I have sen, when that of my houshold  
 That was, and of my falowship, that wold,  
 If that thei wist, quhat thing schuld me ples,  
 Thei wold nochte leif for trawell nor for es 2180  
 And sum tyme It pefwmyt was & fud,  
 That in my houshold of al this world I had  
 The flour of knyghted and of chevalry,  
 Bot now thar-of y se the contrarye, 2184  
 Sen that the flour of knyghted is away "  
 "Schur," quod he, "of Refone suth yhe say,  
 [Fol 27 b] And if god will, In al this waird so Round  
 He schal be foght, if that he may be found " 2188  
 Gawain departs to  
 seek Lancelot
- Than gawan goth with o knyghtly chere,  
 At the hal-dure he faith In this maner  
 "In this pasag who lykith for to wend?  
 It is o Iohne most for to comend 2192  
 That In my tyme In to the court fallith,  
 To knyghts wiche that chewellry lowith  
 Or trawell In to armys for to hant,  
 And lat no knyght fra thyne furt hyme awant 2196  
 That it denyith,"—with that onon thei rof,  
 Al the knyghts, and frome the burdis gof  
 The king that fauch In to his hart was wo,  
 And said, "for gawan, nece, why dois yow so? 2200  
 Knowis yow nochte I myne houshold fuld encref,  
 In knyghted, and in honore, and larges?  
 And now yow thinkith mak me diffolat  
 Of knyghts, and my hous tranfulat, 2204  
 To sek o knyght, and It was neuer more  
 Hard sich o femble makith o before "  
 Gawain explains
- "Sir," quod he, "als few as may yhow ples,  
 For what I said was no thing for myne es, 2208

- Nor for desir of falowfchip, for why  
 To paß alone, but cumpany, think I,  
 And ilk knyght to paß o fundry way,  
 The mo thei paß the fewar efchef thay, 2212  
 Bot thus shal pas no mo bot as yhow left "  
 "Takith," *quod* he, "of quhom þhe lykith best,  
 Fourty in this pasag for to go," Arthur assigns  
 At this *command* and gawan chesit fo him forty com  
 2216 panions  
 Fourty, quhich that he lourt, & that was  
 Richt glad in to his falowfchip to pas  
 [A]nd furth thei go, and al anarmyt thei  
 Come to the king, *withouthen* more delay, 2220  
 The relykis brocht, as was the *maner* tho,  
 When any knyghtis frome the court suld go  
 Or when the passit, or quhen thei com, thei fwor  
 The trowth to schaw of euery aduentur 2224  
*Sw* gawan knelyng to his falowis fais,  
 "Yhe lordis, wich that in this feking gais,  
 So many noble and worthi knyghtis ar þhe,  
 Me think in wayne yhour trauel shuld noch be, 2228  
 For aduentur is non so gret to pref,  
 As I suppone, nor þhe fal It effchef,  
 And if þhe lyk as I that shal dewyß,  
 Yhour oth to fwer In to the samyne wyß 2232  
 Myne oth to kep,"—and that thei vndertak,  
 How euer so that he his oth mak  
 It to conferf, and that thei have all fworñ  
 Than gawan, wich that was the king beforñ, 2236  
 On kneis fwore, "I fal the futh duclar  
 Of euery thing when I agan Repar,  
 Nor neuer more aþhane fal I returnñ,  
 Nore in o place long for to fuorñ 2240  
 Whill that the knyght or verray evydens  
 I have, that shal be toknis of credens "  
 His falowfchip abasit of that thing,  
 And als therof anoyt was the king, 2244

Arthur assigns  
him forty com  
panions

These knyghts  
arm themselves

and bring the  
relics whereon  
to swear to shew  
the truth

[Fol. 28 a]

Gawane swears  
not to return till  
he has found  
Lancelot, or evi  
dence of him

Arthur reproves him for forgetting the coming day of battle	Saying, "Nece, yow haith al foly vroght And wilfulnes, that haith nocht in thi thoght The day of batell of galot and me "	
Gawane says it must be so Gawane and his fellows lace their helm and take their leave	<i>Quod</i> gawan, "Now non other ways ma be " Thar-wit <sup>h</sup> he and his falowfchip alfo Thar halmys lafit, on to ther hors <sup>3</sup> thei go, Syne tuk ther lef, and frome the court the fare, Thar names ware to long for to declai Now fal we leif hyme and his cumppany, That in thar feking paffith biffely ,	2248     2252
The story returns to the lady of Melyhalt	And of the lady of melyhalt we tell, With whome the knyght mot ned alway duell <sup>1</sup> [O] day fhe mayd hyme on to hir prefens fet, And on o fege be fid hir haith hyme fet, "Sir, in keping I have yow halding long," And thus sche said, "for gret trefpas & wrong, Magre my stewart, in worfchip, and for thi 3he fuld me thonk,"—"madem," <i>quod</i> he, "and I Thonk yhow fo that euer, at my mycht, Whar-fo I paß that I fal be yhour knyght "	2256     2260   2264
She inquires Lancelot's name	"Grant mercy, fir, bot o thing I 3ow pray, What that 3he ar 3he wold wichsauf to fay "	
He refuses to tell	"Madem," <i>quod</i> he, "yhour mercy ask I, quhy That for to fay apone no wyß may I "	2268
She vows to keep him in thrall till the day of combat [Fol 28 b]	"No ! wil 3he not ? non oyer ways as now 3he fal repent, and ek I mak awow One to the thing the wich that I beft love, Out frome my keping fal 3he not Remuf Befor the day of the asfemblee, Wich that, o 3her, is nereft for to bee , And if that 3ow haith pleffit for to fay, 3he had fore me deluerit ben this day ,	2272      2276
and to go to the court to try and learn it	And I fal knaw, quhey <sup>er</sup> 3he wil or no, For I furt <sup>h</sup> -wit <sup>h</sup> one to the court fal go,	

<sup>1</sup> Room is here left in the MS for an illuminated letter, and a small "o" inserted as a note

- Whar that al thithing<sup>s</sup> goith & cumy<sup>th</sup> foñ "
- "Madem," *quod* he, "y<sup>h</sup>our plesance mot be doñe " 2280
- With that the knyght one to his chalmer goith, The knyght re  
tires
- And the lady hir makith to be wroith
- Aȝanis hyme, but futhly vas sche not,
- For he al out was mor in to hir thocht 2284
- Than schapith fhe aȝane the ferd day,
- And richly sche gan hir self aray ,
- Syne clepit haith apone her cufynes,
- And faith, "y will one to the court me dres , 2288 Before going to  
the court
- And malice I have schawin on to ȝhon knyght,
- For quhy he wold nocht schew me quhat he hicht,
- Bot so, I-wyð, It is nocht in my thocht,
- For worthyar non In to this erth is wrocht 2292
- Tharfor I pray, and hartly I requer she prays hei  
cousin to take  
care of him
- ȝhe mak hyme al the cumpany and chere,
- And do hyme al the worfchip and the es,
- Excep his honore, wich that may hym ples , 2296
- And quhen I cum delu<sup>e</sup>erith hyme als fre
- As he is now ,—"ne have no dred," *quod* sche
- [T]he lady partat, and hir lef hath ton,
- And by hir Iorne to the court Is gon 2300 The lady meets  
Arthur at Logris
- The king hapnit at logris for to bee,
- Wich of his realme was than the chef cete ,
- And haith hir met, and In til hartly wyf
- Refaut her, and welcummyt oft fyf , 2304
- And haith hir home one to his palice brocht,
- Whar that no dante nedith to be focht,
- And maid hir cher with al his ful entent
- Eft supir one to o chalmer ar thei went, 2308
- The king and sche, and ek the quen al thre ,
- Of hir tithandis at hir than askit hee,
- And what that hir one to the court had brocht?
- "Sir," *quod* sche, "I come<sup>1</sup> not al for nocht , 2312 and inq<sup>u</sup>ires wh<sup>at</sup>  
has brought her

<sup>1</sup> MS "conne "

- She says she has  
a friend who has  
made a challenge,  
[Fol 29 a]
- I have o frend haith o dereyne ydoo,  
And I can fynd none able knyght tharto ,  
For he the wich that in the contrar Is  
Is hardy, ftrong, and of gret kyne, I wyß , 2316  
Bot, It is said, If I mycht have with me  
þour knyght, quich in the last affemble  
Was in the feld, and the red armys bur,  
In his manhed y mycht my causß affur , 2320  
And yhow, sir, richt hartly I exort  
In to this ned my myfter to support "  
"Madem, by faith one to the quen I aw  
That I best loue, the knyght I neuer saw 2324  
In nerneß by which that I hyme knew ,  
And ek gawane Is gan hyme for to few  
With other fourty knyghtis In to cumpany "  
The lady smylt at ther fanteßy , 2328  
The quen thar with presumyt wel that sche  
Knew quhat he was, and said, "madem, If þhe  
Knowith of hyme what that he is, or quhar,  
We þhow besech til ws for to declar " 2332  
"Madem," quod sche, "now be the faith that I  
Aw to the king and yhow, as for no why  
To court I cam, but of hyme to Inquere ,  
And sen of hyme I can no tathingis here, 2336  
Nedlyngis to-morn homwart mon I far "
- Arthur replies  
that Gawane is  
gone to seek him
- "Na," quod the king, "madem, our son It waire ,  
þhe fal remayne her for the qwenys sak ,  
Syne shal þhe of our best knyghtis tak " 2340  
"Sir," quod sche, "I pray þow me excusß,  
For quhy to paß nedis me behuß ,  
Nor, sen I want the knyght which I have socht,  
Wtheris with me to have desir I nocht, 2344  
For I of otheris have that may suffice "  
Bot þht the king hir prayt on sich wyß,  
That sche remanit whill the thrid day ,  
Syne tuk hir leif to pasing hom hir way 2348
- Arthur replies  
that Gawane is  
gone to seek him
- The queen asks  
the lady if she  
knows where he  
is
- She replies no  
and proposes to  
return
- Arthur prays her  
to stay
- She remains till  
the thrid day

- It nedis not the festing to declar  
 Maid one to hir, nor company nor fare,  
 Sche had no knyght, sche had no damyfeill,  
 Nor thei richly rewardit war and well 2352  
 Now goith the lady homwart, and sche  
 In her entent defyrus Is to fee  
 The flour of knyghted and of chevelry,  
 So was he pryfit and hold to euery wy 2356  
**T**he lady, which one to hir palace come,  
 Bot of schort time remanith haith at home  
 When sche gart bryng, *with*outen Recidens,  
 With grete effere this knyght to hir *presens*, 2360  
 And said hyme, "for, so mekil have I *focht*  
 And knowith that be-for I knew *nocht*  
 That If yhow lyk I wil yhou Ransome mak'  
 "Madem, gladly, wil zhe *wich*lauf to tak 2364  
 Efter that as my powar may atten,  
 Or that I may prowid be ony men"  
 "Now, for," she said, "forfute It sal be so,  
 Yhe sal have thre, and cheif yhow on of tho, 2368  
 And if yhow lykith them for to refus,  
 I can no mor, but zhe sal me excus,  
 Yhe nedis not futen yhour aduentur  
 Contynualy In ward for til endur" 2372  
 "Madem," *quod* he, "and I yhow hartly pray,  
 What that thei say<sup>1</sup> zhe wald *wich*lauf to say?"  
 "[T]he first," *quod* sche, "who hath in to the cheif  
 Of low yhour hart, and if zhe may dereñ? 2376  
 The next, yhour nam, the which ze sal not lye?  
 The thrid, if euer zhe think of cheualry  
 So mekil worchip to atten in feild  
 Apone o day in aimys wnder scheld, 2380  
 As yat zhe dyd the famyne day, when zhe  
 In red armys was at the affemlee?"

She is sumptu-  
ously enter-  
tained

and returns  
home

[Fol 29 b]

Soon after, she  
sends for Lance-  
lot

and proposes to  
ransom him

on one of three  
conditions

Either he must  
tell whom he  
loves

or declare his  
name  
or say if he ex-  
pects again to  
equal his former  
exploits

<sup>1</sup> So MS We should probably read "bee"



	"Madem," <i>quod</i> he, "is thar non vther way Me to redem, but only thus to fay	2384
	Of thingis, which that Rynyth me to blam, Me to awant my lady or hir name? But If that I moft schawin furth that one, What suerte schal I have for to gone	2388
	At libertee out of this danger free ?" "Schir, for to dred no myfter is," <i>quod</i> shee , "As I am trew and faithfull woman hold, þhe sal go fre quhen one of thir is told "	2392
He refuses to tell his lady's name,	"Madem, yhour will non vther ways I may, I mone obey , and to the first y fay, ¹[I]s, to declar the lady of myne hart, My goft sal rather of my brest astart"—	2396
	Whar-by the lady fayndit al for nocht The lowe quiche long hath ben In to his thoct—	
of his own	"And of my nam, schortly for to fay, It stondith so that one no wys I may	2400
[Fol 30 a]	Bot of the thrid, madem, I se that I Mon fay the thing that tuechith velany , For futh it is I traft, and god before, In feld that I sal do of armys more	2404
but declares that he trusts to do more than ever before, and re- quires his liberty	Than euer I did, if I <i>commandit</i> bee And now, madem, I have my libertee, For I have said I neuer thoct to fay " "Now, <i>for</i> ," <i>quod</i> sche, "when euer þhe wil ye may,	2408
She begs of him a boon	Bot o thing Is, I yhow hartly raquer, Sen I have hold yhow apone such maner Not as my fo, that þhe vald grant me till "Madem," <i>quod</i> he, "It sal be as þhe will "	2412
	"Now, <i>for</i> ," <i>quod</i> sche, "it is no thing bot þhe Remaȝn with ws wn to the assemble, And euery thyng that In yhour myfter lȝis I fall gar ordan at yhour awn dewys ,	2416

that he will re-  
main with her  
till the day of  
battle ,

¹ A space is here left for an illuminated letter

- And of the day I fhall yow certefy  
 Of the affemble þhe fal not pas therby ”  
 “ Madem,” *quod* he, “ It fal be as yhow list ”  
 “ Now, *fir*,” *quod* fche, “ and than I hald It beft, 2420  
 That þhe remañ lyk to the famyne dogre  
 As that þhe war, yat non fal wit that þhe  
 Deluerit war , and in to facret wyf  
 Thus may þhe be , and now yhe fal dewyf 2424  
 What armys that yhow lykyth I gar mak ”  
 “ Madem,” *quod* he, “ armys al of blak ”  
*With* this, this knyght is to his chalmer goñ ,  
 The lady gan ful prewaly diffpone 2428  
 For al that longth to the knyght, in feild ,  
 Al blak his horß, his armour, and his fcheld,  
 That nedful is, al thing fche well prewidith ,  
 And in hir keping thus *with* hir he bidith 2432  
 Suppos of love fche takyne hath the charg,  
 Sche bur It clos, ther-of fche vas not larg,  
 Dot wyfly fche abftenit hir diffir,  
 For ellas guhat, fche knew, he was afyre , 2436  
 Thar for hir wit hir worfchip haith defendit,  
 For in this world thar was nan mor commendit,  
 Both of difcreccioune and of womanhed,  
 Of gouernans, of nurtur, and of farhed 2440  
 This knyght *with* hir thus al this whil mon duell,  
 And furtþ of arthur fumthing wil we tell—  
 [T]hat walkyng vas furtþ in to his Regiounis,  
 And foiornyt in his ceteis and his townis, 2444  
 As he that had of vidome fufficyans  
 He kept the lore of mafter amytaus  
 In ryghtwyfnes, In fefting and larges,  
 In chernifng cumpany and hamlynes , 2448  
 For he was buffy and was deligent,  
 And largely he iffith, and difpent  
 Rewardis, both one to the pur & riche,  
 And holdith feft throw al the þher eliche 2452

and requires  
 what arms he  
 would like to  
 have made for  
 him. He chooses  
 black armour

which is pro-  
 vided

She keeps her  
 love close

being commend-  
 ed for discretion

The story returns  
 to Arthur—

[Fol. 30 b.]

who obeys the  
 counsel of Amy-  
 taus

and gives away  
 largely

In al the warld passing gan his name,  
 He chargit not bot of encierß and fame,  
 And how his puples hartis to empleß ,  
 Thar gladnes ay was to his hart most es 2456  
 He rakith not of riches nor treßfour,  
 Bot to dispend one worschip & honour ,  
 He isith riches, he isith lond and rent,  
 He chemiffyth them wíth wordis eloquent, 2460  
 and thus gams his  
 people s love So that thei can them vitrally propone  
 In his feruice thar lyves to dispone  
 So gladrith themē his homely contynans,  
 His chemifyng, his wordis of plesans, 2464  
 His cumpany, and ek his mery chere,  
 His gret rewardis, and his iftis fere  
 Thus hath the king non vthir besynes  
 Bot chemfing of knyghtis and larges, 2468  
 To mak hyme felf of honour be commend ,  
 And thus the 3her he drywith to the ende

EXPLICIT SECUNDA PARS, INCIPIT TERCIA PARS

## [BOOK III]

- The long durk pafag<sup>1</sup> of the vinter, & the lycht  
 Of phebus *comprochit with his mycht*, 2472 The sun ascends  
in his altitude
- The which, afcending In his altitud,  
 Awodith saturn *with his ftormys Rude*,  
 The foft dew one fra the hewyne doune valis<sup>2</sup>  
 Apone the erth, one hill: and on valis, 2476 The foft dew  
falls down from  
heaven
- And throw the fobir & the mwft hwmouris  
 Vp nurift ar the erbis, and in the flouris  
 Natur the erth of many diuerß hew  
 Our fret, and cled *with the tendu new* 2480 Nature decks the  
earth with vari  
ous hues The  
birds may hude
- The birdis may them hiding in the grawis  
 Wel frome the halk, that oft ther lyf berevis,  
 And scilla hie afcending in the ayre,  
 That every vight may heryng hir declar 2484 [Fol 31 a]  
them from the  
hawk in the  
groves and Scilla  
may ascend in  
the air
- Of the feffone the paffing luftynes  
 This was the tyme that phebus gan hym drefß  
 In to the rame, and haith his courß bygown,  
 Or that the trewis and the 3her vas Rown, 2488
- Which was y-fet of galiot and the king  
 Of thar affemble, and of thar meting  
 Arthur haith a xv dais before  
 Affemblit al his barnag and more 2492
- That weryng wnder his fubeccioune,  
 Or louth hyme, or longith to his crown,  
 And haith his Iornay tone, *withhouten let*,  
 On to the place the wich that was y fet, 2496 The tyme of com  
bat between  
Galiot and the  
king drew near
- Whar he hath found befor hyme mony o knyght  
 That cummyng war *with al thar holl mycht*,

<sup>1</sup> So MS Should we read "pasith" ?<sup>2</sup> So MS It should be "falis"

	Al enarmyt both <i>wit</i> spere & fcheld,	
	And ful of lugis plantith haith the feld,	2500
	Hyme In the wer for to suppoit and ferf	
	At al ther mycht, his thonk for to differf	
	And gawan, which was in the sekeng ȝhit	
	Of the gud knyght, of hyme haith got no wit,	2504
Gawane remem bers the day	Remembrith hyme apone the kingis day,	
	And to his falowis one this wys can say	
	"To ȝhow is knowin the mater, in what wyȝ	
	How that the king hath <i>wit</i> his ennemys	2508
	A certan day, that now comprochit nere,	
	And one to ws war hewynes to here	
	That he var in to perell or in to dreid,	
	And we away and he of ws haith neid ,	2512
	For we but hyme no thing may eschef,	
	And he but ws in honore well may lef ,	
	For, be he loȝt, we may no thing <i>wit</i> ftond,	
	Our-felf, our honore we tyne, & ek our lond	2516
and proposes to his fellows to go to help the king	Tharfor, I red we pas on to the king,	
	Suppos our oth It hurt in to fum thing,	
	And in the feld <i>wit</i> hyme for til endur,	
	Of lyf or deth and tak our aduentur "	2520
	Thar-to thei ar consentit euerilkon,	
	And but dulay the have thar Iorney toȝne	
[Fol 81 b ]	When that the king them saw, in his entent	
Arthur is well content at their coming	Was of thar com Right wonder well content ,	2524
	For he <i>preswyt</i> no thing that thei wold	
not expecting them	Have cummyne, but one furth to yer sekeng hold	
	And thus the kinghis oft assemblit has	
	Aȝane the tyme, aȝane the day that vas	2528
	Y-statut and ordant for to bee,	
	And every thing hath set in the dogre	
	[A]nd galiot, that haith no thing forȝhet	
	The termys quich that he befor had set,	2532
Galiot also as seables his folk	Assemblit has, apone his best maner,	
	His folk, and al his other thingis sere,	

- That to o weryour length to proud,  
 And is y-come apone the tothir fyde  
 Whar he befor was one than vas he two,  
 And al his vthir artillery also  
 He dowblith hath, that merwell was to feñ,  
 And by the rewere lychtit one the greñ,  
 And ftronghar thane ony wallit toun  
 His oft y bout yclofit in Randoune  
 Thus war thei cummyne apone ather fyð  
 Be-for the tyme, them-felf for to proud  
 Or that the trewis was complet & rwn,  
 Men mycht have fen one euery fid begwn  
 Many a fair and knyghtly Iuperty  
 Of luffy men, and of 3ong chevaly,  
 Difyrus In to armys for to pruf,  
 Sum for wynyng, fum caufith vas for luf,  
 Sum In to worfchip to be exaltate,  
 Sum caufit was of wordis he & hate,  
 That lykit not ydill for to ben,  
 A hundereth pair at onis one the gren  
 Thir luffy folk thus can thar tyme difpend,  
 Whill that the trewis goith to the ende  
 The trewis pafit, the day is cummyne onofie,  
 One euery fyð the can them to difpone,  
 And thai that war moft facret & moft dere  
 To galiot, at hyme the can enquire,  
 "Who fal affemble one yhour fyð to morie?"  
 To-nycht the trewis to the end is worne"  
 He anfuert, "As yhit one to this were  
 I ame awyfit I wil none armys bere,  
 Bot If It ftond of more Neceffitee,  
 Nor to the feld will pas, bot for to fee  
 Yhone knyght, the which that berth fch o fame"  
 Than clepit he the conquest king be name,  
 And hyme commandit xxx thoufand tak  
 A3aine the morne, and for the feld hyme mak
- 2536 doubling his  
army and artil  
lery
- 2540 and pitches on  
the green by the  
river
- 2544 Before the truce  
is ended
- 2548 many combats  
are seen between  
lusty men
- 2552 a hundred pair  
at once
- 2556 The truce past
- 2560 Galiot's friends  
inquire who shall  
fight on his side  
on the morrow
- 2564 [Fol 32 a ]
- 2568 He commands  
the first con  
quest king to  
take 30 000 men

	And gawane haith, apone the toyer syde, Confulit his Eme he schuld for them prowid,	2572
	And that he schuld none armys to hyme tak Whill <sup>1</sup> galiot will for the feld hyme mak "I grant," quod [he <sup>2</sup> ], "wharfor þhe mone dispone Yhow to the feld with al my folk to morne,	2576
Gawane leads Arthur s forces	And thinkith in yhour manhed and curage For to recit þhone folkis gret owtrag "	
The day comes	[T]he nycht is gone, vp goith the morow gray, The brycht fone fo cherith al the day	2580
	The knyghtis gone to armys than, in haft , One goith the scheildis and the helmys laft , Arthurs oft out our the furde thai 1yd And thai agane, apone the toyer syd,	2584
Arthur s men cross the ford		
Galiot s men as semble in a vale	Affemblit ar apone o lusty greyne, In to o waill, whar fone thai mycht be feyne Of knyghtis to gedde many o pair In to the feld affemblyng her & thair,	2588
	And ftedis which that haith thar maister lorne, <sup>3</sup> The knyghtis war done to the erth doune borne Sir esquyris, which was o manly knycht In to hyme felf, and hardy vas & wycht ,	2592
Sir Esquyris a manly knight	And in till armys gretly for to pryð, þhit he was puie, he prewit wel oft-fyð , And that tyme was he of the cumpanee Of galiot, bot efterwart was hee	2596
at that time of Galiot s com pany	With arthur , and that day In to the feld He come, al armyt Boith with spere and scheld, With ferð desir, as he that had na dout,	
attacks a band	And is affemblit ewyne apone a rowt ,	2600
	His spere is gone, the knycht goith to the erd, And out onon he pullith haith o fwerd , That day In armys prewit he rycht well His strenth, his manhed , arthurs folk thai fell	2604
and proves his manhood		

<sup>1</sup> MS "Whill "<sup>2</sup> Omitted in MS<sup>3</sup> MS has "borne " We should read "lorne," as in line 2092

Than galys gwynans, with o manly hart,  
 Which broyer was of ywane the bastart,  
 He cummyne Is onone one to the ftour  
 For conquering In armys of honour,  
 And cownterit with efquyris hath so  
 That<sup>1</sup> horß and man, al four, to erth thai go,  
 And ftill o quhill lying at the ground  
 With that o part of arthurs folk thei found  
 Till gwyans, and haith hyme fone refkewit  
 Azanis them til efquyris thei fewyt  
 Of gahot's well xxx<sup>th</sup> knyghtis & mo,  
 Gwyans goith done, and vthir vij alfo,  
 The wich war tone & efqwyris relewit  
 Than ywane the anterus, aggrewit,  
 With kynnisfemen one to the melle focht  
 The hardy knyghtis, that one thar worchip thocht,  
 Cownterit them In myddis of the fcheld,  
 Whar many o knyght was born doñ in the feld,  
 Bot thei wich ware on gahotis part,  
 So wnder takand nor of fo hardy hart  
 Ne ware thei not as was in ye contrare  
 Sin galys gwyans was refqwyrt thare  
 With his falowis, and efqwyris don bore  
 Thar al the batellis cam, withouten more,  
 On ather part, and is affemblit fo  
 Whar fyfty thoufand war thei, & no mo  
 In o plane befyd the gret Riwere  
 Xxx thoufand one gahotis half thei vare,  
 Of arthurs x thoufand and no mo  
 Thei ware, and 3hit thai contentit them fo  
 And in the feld fo manly haith born,  
 That of thar fois haith the feld forfworn  
 The conquest king, wich the perell knowith,  
 Ful manly one to the feld he drowith,  
 The lord fir gawan, couerit with his fcheld,

Than Galy's Gwy  
 nans brother of  
 Ywan,

2608 [Fol 32 b]

encounters him  
 and horse and  
 man go all four  
 to earth

2612

Arthur's folk res  
 cue Gwyans

2616

thirty knights of  
 Gahot's arrive  
 and rescue Es  
 quyris

Next Ywan  
 comes to the  
 melle

2620

2624

Gahot's men give  
 way

2628

Gwyans is again  
 rescued

2632

50 000 men are  
 assembled  
 30 000 on Gahot's  
 side approach the  
 river,

2636

and 10 000 on  
 Arthur's

Gawane puts the  
 conquest-king to  
 flight

<sup>1</sup> MS has "than"



	He rufchit in myddis of the feld,	2640
	And haith them fo in to his com affayt,	
	That of his manhed ware thei al affrait ,	
	No langer mycht thei contrar hyme endur,	
	Bot fled, and goth one to difcumfitue	2644
Galiot full of an ger and grief sends out a new band	And galiot, wich haith the difcumfit fen,	
	Fulfilht ful of anger and of ten,	
	Incontinent he fend o new poware,	
	Whar with the feldis al our couerit ware	2648
[Fol 33a]	Of armyt ftedis both in plait and maill,	
	With knyghtis wich war redde to affaill	
Gawane draws his men together and shews them comfortable words	Sir gawan, feing al the gret fuppris	
	Of fois cummyng In to fch o wys,	2652
	Togiddir al his cumpany he drew,	
	And comfortable wordis to them fchew ,	
	So at the cummyng of thar ennemys	
They rece ve the foe in manly wise	Thei them refauf, in fo manly wyf,	2656
	That many one felth deithus wound,	
	And wnder horf lyith fobing one the ground	
	This viher cummyth in to gret defir,	
	Fulfilht ful of matelent and Ire,	2660
	So frechly, with fo gret o confuens,	
	Thar ftrong affay hath don fch vyolens,	
	And at thar come arthuris folk fo led,	
	That thar war ay abayfit and adred	2664
	Bot gawan, wich that, by this worldis fame,	
	Of manhed and of knyghted bur the name,	
	Haith prewit [hym] well be experiens ,	
	For only In til armys his defens	2668
Gawane encour ages his fellows	Haith maid his falowis tak fch hardyment,	
	That manfully thei biding one the bent	
	Of his manhed war me well to raherf ,	
	The knyghtis throw the fcheldis can he perf,	2672
	That many one thar deithus haith refaut ,	
	None armour frome his mychty hond them faut,	
though their foes are three to one	3hit ay for one ther ennemys wor thre	

- Long mycht thei nocht endur in fuch dugree , 2676  
 The preß it was so creuell & so ftrong,  
 In gret any and haith *continewit* longe,  
 That, magre them, thei nedis moft abak  
 The way one to thar lugis for to tak 2680  
*Sir gawan* thar fufferith gret myfchef,  
 And wonderis in his knychthed can he pref ,  
 His falowfchip haith *merwell* that hym faw,  
 So haith his fous that of his fuerd ftud aw 2684  
 King arthur, that al this whill beheld  
 The danger and the perell of the feld,  
*Sir ywan with* o falowfchip he fende,  
 Them In that ned to help & to defend, 2688  
 Qwich fond them In to danger and in were,  
 And enterit nere In to thar tentis were  
*Sir gawan* fechtand was one fut At erde,  
 And no defend, but only in his fwerde, 2692  
 Azanis them both *with* fpere and fcheld  
 Of galowa the knycht goith to the erde <sup>1</sup>  
 Thar was the batell fuyous and woud <sup>2</sup>  
 Of armyt knychtis , to the grownde thar 3hud 2696  
*Sir ywane*, that was a noble knyght,  
 He fchew his ftrenth, he fchew thar *his* gret mycht,  
 In al his tyme that neuer of before  
 Off armys, nore of knychthed, did he more 2700  
*Sir gawan* thar refkewit he of fors,  
 Magre his fous, and haith hyme fet one horß  
 That frome the first *conqueft* king he wañ ,  
 Bot *sir gawan* fo ewill was wondit than, 2704  
 And in the feld fuppruifit was fo fore,  
 That he the werß thar-of was euermore  
 Thar fchew the lord *sir ywan* *his* curage,  
 His manhed, & *his* noble waffolage , 2708  
 And gawan, in his doing, wald nocht irk ,

yet his men are  
forced to retreat  
to their tents

Arthur beholds  
the peril of the  
field and sends  
Sir Ywan to help  
them

[Fol 99 b]

who finds Sir  
Gawane fighting  
on foot with only  
his sword

The battle was  
furious and wood.

Sir Ywan rescues  
Sir Gawane

who was so evilly  
wounded that he  
was the worse  
thereof eter  
more

<sup>1</sup> Read "felde"? <sup>2</sup> MS "woud," but the "e" is undotted, and is therefore perhaps meant for the first stroke of a "u"



- Thir tythyngis one to lancelot ar goñ,  
 Whar of that he was wonder wo bygone,  
 And for the lady haftely he sent,  
 And fche til hyme, at his command, Is went 2748  
 He faluft hir, and laid, "madem, Is trew  
 Thir tithingis I hei report of new  
 Of the affemble, and meting of the oft,  
 And of *for* gawan, wich that fhuld be loft? 2752  
 If that be fwth, adew the flour of armys,  
 Now neuer more recoueryt be the harmys '  
 In hyme was manhed, curteffly, and trouth,  
 Befy trawell In knyghted, ay but fleuth, 2756  
 Humilyte, [and] gentrice, and cwrag,  
 In hyme thar was no maner of outrage  
 Allace ! knyght, allace ! what fhall yow fay ?  
 Yow may complen, yow may bewail the day 2760  
 As of his deith, and gladfchip aucht to fes,  
 Baith menftrafy and fefting at the des ,  
 For of this lond he was the noll comfort,  
 In tyme of ned al knyghted to fupport ' 2764  
 Allace ! madem, and I durft fay at-3he  
 Al yhour beheft not kepit haith to me,  
 Whar of that I was in to full belef  
 A3a3e this day that I fchuld have my lef, 2768  
 And nocht as cowart thus fchamfully to ly  
 Excludit in to cage frome chewalry,  
 Whar othir knyghtis anarmyt on thar ftedis  
 Hawntis ther 3houthhed in to knyghtly dedis " 2772  
 "Sir," quod fche, "I red yhow not difple3,  
 3he may In tyme her-eftes cum at es ,  
 For the thrid day Is ordanit, & fhall be  
 Of the oftis a new affemble, 2776  
 And I have gart ordan al the gere  
 That longith to 3our body for to were,  
 Boith hor3 and armow In the famyne wyf  
 Of fable, ewyne aftir 3hour awn dewy3 , 2780

Lancelot re-  
quests to see the  
lady

and inquires if  
Gawane is really  
likely to die

He laments over  
him

first apostro-  
phizing himself

and next blaming  
the lady for not  
having allowed  
him to be present  
in the battle

[Fol 34b]

She promises he  
shall go to the  
next battle

saying that his  
sable armour is  
ready

	And yhe fal her remayne one to the day , Syne may 3he paf, fore well 3he knaw the way ” “ I will obey, madem, to yhour extent ”	
	With that fche goyth, and to hir reft is went	2784
In the morn she takes her leave, to go to the court	One the morn aly vp fche 10f Without delay, and to the knyght fche gois, And twk hir lef, and faid that fcho vald fare On to the court, with outen any mare	2788
He kneels and thanks her often	Than knehit he, and thankit hir oft-fys, That fche fo mych hath done hyme of gentrif, And hir byhecht euer, at his myght, To be hir awn trew & ftedfast knyght	2792
She goes unto the king,	Sche thonketh hyme, and fyne fche goyth her way On to the king, with owten more delay, Whai that in <sup>1</sup> honour with king & qwen fche fall Rycht thonkfully refaut be with all	2796
	Eft to fir gawan thai hir led, & fche Ryght gladly hyme defyrnt for to fee, And fche hyme fond, and fche was glad tharfore, All vthir ways than was hir told before	2800
and finds Sir Gawane quite dif- ferent from what had been told her	The knyght, the wich in to hu keping vas, Sche had commandit to hir cuffynece, Wich cherist hyme apone hir beft manere, And comfort hyme, and maid hym ryght gud chere	2804
The lady s cousin cherishes Lance- lot in her best manner	[T]he days goyth, fo paffith als the nyght, The thrid morow, as that the fone vas lyght, The knyght onon out of his bed arof, The maden fone one to his chalmer gof,	2808
The thrid day the maiden goes to his chamber and fastens on his armour	And facretly his armour one hyme fpent He tuk his lef, and fyne his way he went Ful prewaly, ryght to the famyne greñ One the rewere, whar he befor had ben,	2812
He goes to the same green, be- side the river, as before	Ewyne as the day [he] the first courf hath maad Alone ryght thar he howit, and abaade,	

<sup>1</sup> MS “with,” which is crossed out, and “in” inserted above, rather minutely written

- Behal ding to the bertes, whai the qweñ  
 Befor at the affemble he had señ 2816
- Rycht* fo the fone fchewith furth his *lycht*,  
 And to his armour went is euery *wycht*,  
 One athir half the Iufting is bygon,  
 And many o fair and kny ch[t]ly courß is rown 2820
- The blak kny ch[t] hit howyns on his fted,  
 Of al thar doing takith he no hed,  
 Bot ay, apone the befynes of thocht,  
 In beholding his ey departit noch t 2824
- To quhom the lady of melyhalt beheld,  
 And knew hyme by his armour & his fcheld,  
 Qwhat that he was, and thus fche faid one hycht  
 "Who is he gone? who may he be, þhone kny ch[t], 2828  
 So full that hovith and fterith not his Ren,  
 And feith the kny ch[t]s rynyng one the greñ?"  
 Than al beholdith, and in princypale
- Sir* gawan beholdith moft of all, 2832
- Of melyha[l]t the lady to hyme maid  
 Incontinent, his couche and gart be had  
 Be fore o wyndew thore, as he my ch[t] se  
 The kny ch[t], the oft, and al the affemble 2836  
 He lukith furth, and fone the kny ch[t] hath fen,  
 And, but delay, he faith one to the qwen,  
 "Madem, if þhe remembir, fo it was  
 The red kny ch[t] in to the famyne place 2840  
 That wencuft al [at] the firt affemble,  
 Whar that gone kny ch[t] howis, howit hee"  
 "þha," *quod* the qwen, "rycht well remembir I,  
 Qwhat is the cauß at þhe inquere, & quhy?" 2844  
 "Madem, of [al] this larg warld is he  
 The kny ch[t] the wich I moft desir to fee  
 His ftrenth, his manhed, his curag, and his my ch[t],  
 Or do in armys that longith to o kny ch[t]" 2848
- [B]y thus, arthur, with confell well awyfit,  
 Haith ordant his batellis, and devyfit

[1 ol 3 a]

He abides there  
 alone lool ing to  
 wards the para  
 pet where he saw  
 the queen

The jousting be  
 gins

The black knight  
 still halts on his  
 steed

The lady beho'ds  
 him and knows  
 him but yet in  
 quires who he is

thus calling the  
 attention of Ga  
 wane

who saith to the  
 queen

Madam re  
 member that the  
 red knight halt  
 ed where you  
 knight halts

'Why do you in  
 quire?' she re  
 plies

'He is the  
 knight madam  
 whom I most de  
 sire to see

Arthur arranges  
 his lines of battle

King Ydrus leads the first	The fift of them led ydrus king, & he O worthy man vas nemmyt for to bee	2852
Harwy the Re weyll an aged knight the second	The secund led harwy the Reweyll, That in this world was knyght that had moft feill For to prowid that longith to the were, One agit knyght, and well couth armys bere	2856
[Fol 35 b ] King Angus a cousin of Arthur, leads the thrid	[T]he thrid feld [he] delueit it in the hond Of angus, king of ylys of scotlande, Wich cufing was one to king arthur nere, One hardy knyght he was, withouten were	2860
King Ywons the fourth	The ferd batell led ywons the king, O manly knyght he was In to al thing And thus dewyit ware his batellis fere,	2864
In every com pany are 15,000	In euery feld xv thousand were [T]he fift <sup>1</sup> batell the lord fu ywan lede,	
The lord sir Ywan leads the rearguard	Whois manhed was in euery cuntre dred, Sone he was one to wryne the kyng, Forwart, stout, hardy, wyf, and 3hung , Xx thousand in his oft thai pait, Wich ordanit was for to assemble laft	2868
Galiot's armies	[A]nd galiot, apone the tothir fyde, Rycht wyfly gan his batellis to dewid	2872
Malengynys leads the first line,	The fift of them led malengynys the king, None hardyar In to this erth lewyng , He neuer more out of his cuntre Raid, Nor he with hyme one hundereth knyghtis hade	2876
the first conquest king the second, Walydeyne the thrid,	[T]he secund the first conquest king led, That for no perell of armys vas adred , The thrid, o king clepit walydeyne, He led, and was o manly knyght, but weyne	2880
Clamedeus the fourth,	[T]he ferd, king clamedeus has, Wich that lord of far ylys was	
and King Bran dymagus the fifth	The fift <sup>2</sup> batell, whar xl thousand were, King brandymagus had to led and ftere,	2884

<sup>1</sup> MS "fift" See 1 2870<sup>2</sup> MS "firt"

- O manly kny~~cht~~, and prewit well oft fyð,  
 And in his confell wonder ſchaip & wyð  
 Galot non amys bur that day,  
 Nor as o kny~~cht~~ he wald hyme felf aray, 2888  
 But as o ſeruant in o habariowne,  
 O prekyne hat, and ek o gret trownſciown  
 In til his hond, and one o ourfour fet,  
 The beſt that was in ony lond to get 2892  
 Endlong the iewar men my~~cht~~ behold & fee,  
 Of kny~~chts~~ weryne mony one affemble,  
 And the blak kny~~cht~~ full he couth abyde,  
 Wethout remowyng, one the Riwer fyde, 2896  
 Bot to the bartes to behold and fee  
 Thai as his hart defyrit moſt to bee  
 And quhen the lady of melyhalt haith feñ  
 The kny~~cht~~ fo ſtond, ſche ſaid one to the qweñ, 2900  
 “Madem, It is my confell at þhe ſend  
 One to þone kny~~cht~~, þour felf for to commend,  
 Beſeiching hyme that he wald wnder tak  
 This day to do of amys, for þour ſak ” 2904  
 The quen anſwerit as that hir lykit nochit,  
 For othir thing was more In to hir thochit,  
 “ For well þhe ſe the perell how diſio[1]nt,  
 The adwentur now ſtondith one the point 2908  
 Boith of my lord his honore, and his lond,  
 And of his men, in<sup>1</sup> danger how thai ſtond  
 Bot þhe, and ek thir vther ladice may,  
 If that yhow lykith, to the kny~~cht~~ gai fay 2912  
 The meſag, is none that wil yhow let,  
 For I tharof fal nochit me entermet ”  
 On to the quen ſcho ſaith, “ her I,  
 If ſo it pleaþ thir vthur ladice by, 2916  
 Am for to ſend one to the kny~~cht~~ content, ”  
 And al the ladice can thar to affent,

Galot bore no  
arms

but was arrayed  
as a ſervant in a  
habergeon with  
a prekyne hat  
and a trunchoon  
in his hand

The black knight  
ſtill remains  
looking towards  
the parapet

The lady ſays to  
the queen—  
[Fol. 36 a ]

Madam pray  
commend your  
ſelf to yon  
knight

The queen repheſ

that the lady and  
the reſt may ſend  
a meſſage but  
that ſhe will not  
herſelf take part  
in it

<sup>1</sup> Stevenson reads “the”, but “the” is croſſed out, and  
“in” written over it



	Befeching hir the meſag to dewyſ,	
	As ſche that was moſt prudent & moſt wyſ	2920
The lady ſends a diſcreet maiden	Sche grantit, and o madeñ haith thai tone,	
	Diſcret, apone this meſag for till gone ,	
and Sir Gawine a ſquire with two ſpeurs	And ſu gawan a ſqwyar bad alſo,	
	With two ſperis one to the knyght to go	2924
	The lady than, withouten more dulay,	
	Haith chargit hir apone this wyſ to ſay	
to ſay that all the ladies the queen alone excepted commend them to the black knight	“Schaw to the knyght, the ladice euer-ilkone	
	Ben In the court, excep the quen allon,	2928
	Til hyme them haith recommandit oft fyſ,	
	Befeching hyme of knyghted and gentriſ,	
	(Or if It h upyne euermore that he ſhall	
	Cum, quhar thai may, owther an or all,	2932
	In ony thing awal hyme or fupport,	
	O do hyme ony plefans or comfort,) He wold wichfaſ for loue of them this day	
and pray him to esſe y ſome deed of arms	In armys ſum manhed to affay ,	2936
	And ſay, ſu gawan hyme the ſperis ſent ,	
	Now go, this is the fek of our entent ”	
The damſel and ſquire	The damyfell ſche hath hir palfray tone,	
	The ſqwyar with the ſperis with hir goñ ,	2940
[Fol 36 b ]	The neſt way thai paſ one to ye knyght,	
repetit the meſſage	Whai ſche repete hir meſag haith ful rycht	
Sir I ancelot finding the queen not in the meſſage	And quhen he hard, and planly wnderſtude,	
	How that the quen not in the meſag zude,	2944
was not content,	He ſpak no word, bot he was not content ,	
	Bot, of fir gawan, glaid in his entent,	
	He afkit quhar he was, and of his fair ?	
	And thai to hyme the maner can duclair ,	2948
but asks the ſquire to hold the two ſpeurs ready for him	Than the ſqwyar he prayth that he wold	
	Paſ to the feld, the ſperis for to hold	
	He ſaw the knyghtis ſemblyng her and thare,	
	The ſtedis Rynnyng with the ſadillis bare ,	2952
	His ſpuris goith in to the ſtedis syde,	
	That was ful ſwyft, and lykit not to byd ,	

- And he that was hardy, ferß, and ftout,  
 Furth by o fyd affembling on a rout 2956 He attacks a  
 Whar that one hundereth knyghts was, & mo , company of a  
 And wtt/ the frst has Recounterit so, hundred knights  
 That frome the deth not helpith hym his scheld, slays the nearest  
 Both horß and man is lying in the feld , 2960  
 The spere is gone, and al in pecis brak,  
 And he the trunfeyoune in his hand hath tak  
 That two or thre he haith the sadillis reft, and with the  
 Whill in his hond schortly no thing is left 2964 stump of his  
 Syne, to the fquyar, of the feld is goñ, spear be:aves  
 Fio hyme o spere In to his hond haith ton, two or thise of  
 And to the feld returnyt he azayne their saddles  
 The frst he met, he goith one the plan, 2968 He takes a new  
 And ek the next, and fyne the thrid alfo , spear from the  
 Nor in his hond, nore in his strak was ho square and oer  
 His ennemys that veryng In affray throws thise  
 Befor his ftok, and makith rovm alway , 2972 knyghts  
 And in sich wyß ay in the feld he vrocht,  
 Whill that his speris gon var al to nocht ,  
 Whar-of frr gawan berith vitnefing  
 Throw al this world that thar vas non levyng, 2976  
 In fo schort tyme fo mych of armys wrocht  
 His speris gone, out of the feld he focht, His spears gone  
 And passit is one to the Rewere syde, he returns to his  
 Rycht thore as he was wont for to abyde , 2980 first position  
 And fo beholdyne In the famyne plañ, [Fol. 37 a ]  
 As to the feld hyme lykit nocht azañ  
 Sir gawan saw, and saith on to the quen,  
 "Madem, yhone knyght disponit [not],<sup>1</sup> I weyñ, 2984 Sir Gawane says  
 To help ws more, fore he fo is awyfit , to the queen  
 As I presume, he thunkith hyme dispisit ' Madam yon  
 Of the mesag that we gart to hyme mak , knight thinks  
 Yhowre-felf yhe have fo specially out tak, 2988 himself despised  
 because you so  
 specially except-  
 ed yourself in the  
 message

<sup>1</sup> "not" seems required

	He thinkith ewill contempnit for to bee, Confidering how that the necessitee Most principally to yhowr supporting lyis Tharfor my confell is, yhow to dewyß,	2992
ask him mercy therefore and ex- cuse your guilt	And ek þhowre self in yhowr trespass accusß, And ask hyme mercy, and yhour gilt excusß For well it oucht o prince or o king Til honore and til cheryß in al thing	2996
	O worthi man, that is in knyghted þrowit For throw the body of o man eschevit Mony o wondir, mony one aduenture, That merwell war til any creature	3000
For often by one knight's prowess have 40 000 been worsted by 5 000	And als oft-tyme is both hard & fen, Quhar xl thousand haith discumfit ben With v thousand, and only be o knyght, For throw his strenth, his vorsechip, & his myght,	3004
If yon knight will continue to help the king	His falowship sich comfort of hym tris That thai ne dreid the danger of thar iays And thus, madem, I wot, withouten were, If that þhone knyght this day will þesfyweie	3008
	With his manhed for helping of the king, We sal have causß to dred in to no thing Our folk of hyme thai sal sich comfort tak, And so adied thar ennemys sal mak,	3012
yon folk shall perforce take to flight	That fur I am, onys or the nyght, Of forß þhone folk sal tak one them the flyght Wharfor, madem, that þhe have gilt to mend, My confell is one to þhon knyght þe fend "	3016
She consents to send a message	"Sir," quod sche, "quhat pleffith yhow to do þhe may dewyß, and I consent thar-to " Than was the lady of melyhalt content, And to þu gawan in-to contynent	3020
[Fol 37 b ]	Sche clepit the maid, wich that passit ar , And he hir bad the mesag thus duclar "Say [to] <sup>1</sup> the knyght, the quen hir recommendith,	

<sup>1</sup> "to " seems required

- And fal correk in quhat that fche offendith 3024  
 At his awn will, how fo hyme lift dewyð,  
 And hyme exortith, in moft humyll wyð,  
 As euer he will, whar that fche can or may,  
 Or powar haith hir charg, be ony way, 3028  
 And for his worfchip and his hie manzhede,  
 And for hir luf, to helpen in that ned  
 The king's honore, his land fore to prefer,  
 That he hu thonk for euer may deferf" 3032  
 And four fquyaris chargit he alfo  
 With thre horð and fperis x to go  
 Furth to the knyght, hyme prayng for his fak,  
 At his raquest thame in his ned to tak 3036  
 [T]he maden furth with the fquyaris is went  
 One to the knyght, and fchawith yar entent  
 Tho mefag hard, and ek ye prefent feñ,  
 He anfwerit, and afkith of the qwen, 3040  
 "Su," quod fche, ["sche]"<sup>1</sup> in to þhone bartus lrys,  
 Whar that this day yhour dedis fal dewyð,  
 Yhowr manhed, yhour worfchip, and affere,  
 How þhe conteñ, and how yhe armys bere, 3044  
 The quen hir-felf, and many o lady to,  
 Sal Iugis be, and vitnes how yhe do "  
 Than he, whois hart ftant in o new aray,  
 Saith, "damyceyll, on to my lady fay, 3048  
 How euer that hir lykith that it bee,  
 Als far as wit or powar is in me,  
 I am hir knyght, I fal at hir command  
 Do at I may, withouthen more demand 3052  
 And to fer gawan, for his gret gentrið,  
 Me recommend and thonk a thoufand fyð "  
 With that o fpei he takith in his hond,  
 And fo in to his fterapis can he ftond 3056  
 That to fer gawan femyth that the knyght

that the queen  
humbly exhorts  
him

to help in that  
ned to preſerve  
the king's  
honour and to  
deſerve her  
thanks

Sir Gawane alſo  
ſends four ſquires  
with three horſes  
and ten ſpears

The meſſage  
heard he inquires  
about the queen

and is told that  
from yon parapet  
ſhe can witneſs  
his deeds

He returns a  
meſſage that he  
is the queen's  
knight

He ſtands in his  
ſtraps and  
ſeems to increaſe  
a foot in height

<sup>1</sup> A ſecond "ſche" is here required

Encresyng gon o laig fut one hycht,  
 And to the ladice saith he, and the qwen,  
 "3hon is the knyght that euer I have sen 3060  
 In al my tyme moft knyghtly of affere,  
 And in hyme self gon fareft armys bere "  
 [Fol 38 a] [T]he knyght that haith Remembrit in his thocht  
 Greatly encouraged, The qwenys chargis, & how sche hym befocht, 3064  
 Curag can encresyng to his hart,  
 His ourser lap, and gan onon to start,  
 And he the sqwaris haith reqwyrit fo,  
 That thai with hyme one to the feld wald go 3068  
 without delay he crosses over the river to the field  
 Than goith he one, withouten mor abaid,  
 And our the reuail to the feld he raid,  
 Don goith his spere onone In to the Rest,  
 and goes in wherever he sees most peril  
 And in he goith, withouten mor areft, 3072  
 Thar as he saw moft perell and moft dred  
 In al the feld, and moft of help<sup>1</sup> had ned,  
 Whar semblyt was the first-conquest king  
 With mony o knyght that was in his leding 3076  
 He overthrowes two knights  
 The first he met, doune goith both hors & man,  
 The spere was holl, and to the next he Rañ  
 That helpit hyme his hawbrek nor his scheld,  
 Bot throuch and throuch haith perfit in the feld 3080  
 Sir Kay Sir Sygramors Sir  
 Gresown, Sir Ywan Sir Brandellis  
 and Gaheris all six in a  
 race spur across the field with  
 stretched spears  
 Sir kay, the wich haith thus encontyr fen,  
 His hors he strekith our the larg gren,  
 And fir fygramors ek the desyrand,  
 With fir grefown cummyth at yar honde, 3084  
 Son of the duk, and alswa fir ywan  
 The bastart, and fir brandellis onan,  
 And gaheris, wich that broyr was  
 To gawan, thur fex in a Rañ 3088  
 Delruerly com prekand our the feldis  
 With speris straucht, and couerit with thar scheldis,  
 Sum for love, sum honor to purches,  
 and 100 knights after them  
 And aftur them one hundereth knyghtis was, 3092

<sup>1</sup> MS "held "

- In famyne will, thar manhed to affay  
 On his v falowis clepit than *sir* kay,  
 And faith them, "*siris*, thar has 3honder ben  
 A courß that neuer-more farar was fen 3096 Sir Kay exhorts them  
 Maid be o knyght, and we ar cummyn ilkon  
 Only ws one [his] worschip to dispone,  
 And neuer we in al our dais mycht  
 Have bet axampil than iffith ws 3one knyght 3100  
 Of well doing, and her I hecht for me  
 Ner hyme al day, if that I may, to bee,  
 And folow hyme at al [my] mycht I fall,  
 Bot deth or vthir adwentur me fall 3104  
 With that thir fex, al in one assent,  
 With fresch curag In to the feld Is went  
 The blak knyghtis spere in pecis goñe,  
 Frome o sqwyar oñe vthir haith he toñe, 3108 [Fol 98 b]  
With a second spear the black knight seeks the field closely followed by the six  
 And to the feld onone he goth ful rycht,  
 Thir fex with hyme ay holdith at yar mycht  
 And than bygan his wonderis in the feld,  
 Thar was no helme, no hawbryk, nore no scheld, 3112  
 Nor yhit no knyght so hardy, ferß, nore stout,  
 No 3hit no maner armour mycht hald owt  
 His strenth, nore was of powar to withstond,  
 So mych of armys dyde he with his honde, 3116  
 That every wight ferleut of his deid,  
 And al his fois stondith ful of dreid  
 So befely he can his tyme dispend,  
 That of the speris wich *sir* gawan fend, 3120  
 Holl of them all thar was not lewit oñe,  
 Throw wich but mercy to the deyth is gon  
 Ful many o knyght, and many o wemour,  
 That couth fusten ful hardely o ftour 3124  
 And of his hors suppruut ded ar two,  
 One of his awn, of gawanis one also,  
 And he one fut was fechtand one the gren,  
 When that *sir* kay haith with his falowis fen, 3128 Two horses of his are killed and he fights on foot

- The squire brings  
him a fresh horse,      The fqw[ar] with his horß than to hym brocht,  
Magre his fois he to his courfeir foecht  
Deluierly, as of o mychty hart,
- he leaps into the  
saddle without  
stirrups      Without fteropis in to his fadull ftart,      3132  
That euery wycht beholding mervell has  
Of his ftrenth and deluier befynes
- Sir Kay asks who  
he is,      Sir kay, feing his horß, and how that thai  
War cled in to f[or] gawanis aray,      3136  
Afkith at the fquyar if he knewith  
What that he was, this knyght? & he hym fchewith
- but the squire  
cannot tell      He wift no thing quhat that he was, nore hee  
Befor that day hyme neuer faw with Ee      3140  
Than afkith he, how and one quhat wyß  
On gawanis horß makith hyme fich feruice?  
The fqw[y]ar farth, "foifuth y wot no more,  
My lord ws bad, I not the cruß quhairfore"      3144
- The black knight  
returns to the  
field      The blak knyght, horfit, to the feld can f[er]w  
Als frefch as he was in the morow new,
- The six comrades  
follow him      The fex falowis folowit hyme ilkone,  
And al in front on to the feld ar goñ,      3148
- [Fol 39 a]      Rycht frefchly one thar ennemys thai foght,  
And many o fair poynt of armys vroght  
[F]han hapnyt to king malanguns oft
- Malangyn's host  
is difcomfited by  
king Ydras and  
retreats to join  
the second line  
commanded by  
the Conquest-  
king      By ydras king difcumfit was, & loft,      3152  
And fled, and to the conqueft-king ar goñe,  
Thar both the batellis affemblit In to one,  
King malengynis in to his hart was wo,  
For of hyme-felf no better knyght mycht go,      3156
- so that 40 000 are  
now opposed to  
15 000 of Arthur's      Thar xl thoufand war thai for xv  
Than mycht the feld rycht perellus be fen  
Of armyt knyghtis gaping one the ground,  
Sum deith, and fum with mony a grewous wond,      3160  
For arthuris knyghtis, that manly war and gud,  
Suppos that vthir was o multitude,  
Refaut tham well at the fperis end,  
But one fuch wyß thai may not lang defend      3164

- The blak knyght saw the danger of the feld,  
 And al his doings knowith quho beheld,  
 And ek remembrith in to his entent  
 Of the mesag that sche haith to hyme sent 3168  
 Than curag, ftreth encresing with manhed,  
 Ful lyk o knyght one to the feld he raid,  
 Thinking to do his ladice love to have,  
 Or than his deth befor hir to refave 3172  
 Thar he begynyth in his feið curag  
 Of armys, as o lyounne in his rag,  
 Than merwell was his doing to behold,  
 Thar was no knyght so ftrong, nor yhit so bold, 3176  
 That in the feld befor his fuerd he met,  
 Nor he so hard his strok apone hyme fet,  
 That ded or wondit to the erth he focht,  
 For thar was not bot wonderis that he wrocht 3180  
 And magre of his fois euerilkone,  
 In to the feld oft tymys hyme aloñ  
 Throuch and throuch he passith to & fro,  
 For in the ward<sup>1</sup> it was the maner tho 3184  
 That non o knyght shuld be the brydill tak  
 Hyme to orest, nore cum behynd his bak,  
 Nor mo than on at onys one o knyght  
 Shuld strik, for that tyme worchip ftud fo ryght 3188  
 3hit was the feld ryght perellus and ftrong  
 Till arthuris folk, fet thai contenynt longe,  
 Bot in sich wyð this blak knyght can contē,  
 That thai, the wich that hath his manhed feñ, 3192  
 Sich hardyment haith takyne In his ded,  
 Them thocht thai had no maner caus of dred,  
 Als long as he myght owthir ryd or go,  
 At euery ned he them recomfort fo 3196  
 Sir kay haith with his falowis al the day  
 Folowit hyme al that he can or may,

The black knight  
 knowing who is  
 beholding him,

thinks to have  
 his lady's love or  
 die before her

He works no  
 thing but won-  
 ders

and often passes  
 alone through  
 the field

[Fol 396]

He fights in such  
 wise as to en-  
 courage all who  
 see his deeds

Sir Kay and his  
 fellows follow  
 him all day

<sup>1</sup> Another spelling of *ward*, i e world, which occurs in the fuller form in l 3212



- And wonder well thai have in armys pr<sup>e</sup>wit,  
 And with thar manhed oft thar folk relewit , 3200  
 Bot well thai faucht in diuers<sup>e</sup> placis fere,  
 With multitud yar folk confusit were,  
 That long in sich wy<sup>3</sup> mycht thai noch<sup>t</sup> contēn  
 Sir kay, that hath fir gawans qfquyar<sup>is</sup> fen, 3204  
 He clepit hyme, and haith hyme prayt fo,  
 That to fir harwy the rewell wil he go,  
 And say to hyme, "ws think hyme ewil awyfit,  
 For her throuch hyme he suffeit be supprnit 3208  
 The best knyght that euer armys bur ,  
 And if it so befell of adventur,  
 In his defalt, that he be ded or lamyt,  
 This warld fal have hyme vtraly defamyt 3212  
 And her ar of the round table also  
 A faloufchip, that fall in well and wo  
 Abid with hyme, and furt<sup>h</sup> for to endur  
 Of lyf or deth, thus day, thar adventur , 3216  
 And if so fal discumfyt at thai bee,  
 The king may say that wonder ewill haith he  
 Contentit hyme, and kept his honore,  
 Thus for to tyne of chevalry the flour ! " 3220  
 The squre takes the message  
 The fqw[y]ar hard, and furt<sup>h</sup> his way Raid,  
 In termys fchoth he al his mesag said  
 Se<sup>e</sup> harwy faith, "y wytne<sup>3</sup> god, that I  
 Neuer in my days comytat tratory, 3224  
 And if I now begyne In to myne eld,  
 In ewill tyme fyrst com I to this feld ,  
 Bot, if god will, I fal me fon discharg  
 Say to fir kay, I fal not ber the charg, 3228  
 He fal no mater have me to rapref,  
 I fal amend this mys if that I les "  
 The fqwyar went and telhit to fir kay ,  
 Sir Harwy comes to support them  
 And fir harwy, in al the haft he may, 3232  
 Assemblyt hath his oftis, & onon  
 In gret defyre on the feld is gon

- Before his folk, and haldith furth his way,  
 Don goith his sper, and ewyne before fir kay 3236  
 So hard o knycht he frykith in his ten  
 That hors and he lay both apone the gren  
 Sir gawan saw the counter that he maad,  
 And leuch for al the farues that he had 3240  
 That day fir harwy prewyt in the feld  
 Of armys more than longth to his eld,  
 For he was more than fyfty yher of ag,  
 Set he was ferð and 3ong in his cuag, 3244  
 And fro that he affemblyt his bataill  
 Doune goith the folk of galotys al haill,  
 For to wit/ftond thai war of no poware,  
 And yhit of folk x thousand mo thei vare 3248  
**K** yng valydone, that fauch on such o wys  
 His falowis dangerit wih thai ennemys,  
 Wih al his folk, being fres and new,  
 Goith to the feld onon, them to reskew, 3252  
 Thar was the feld rycht perellus azafie,  
 Of arthuris folk ful many on var ilan  
**B** ot angus, quich that lykith not to bid,  
 And saw the perell one the tother sid, 3256  
 His fted he strok, and wih his oft is gon  
 Whar was most ned, and thar the feld has ton  
**K** yng clamedyus makith non abaid,  
 Bot wih his oft one to the sid he raid 3260  
**A** nd ywons king, that haith his cummyn fen,  
 Encounterit hyme in myddis of the greñ.  
 The aucht batellis affemblyt one this wis,  
 On ather half the clamore and the crys 3264  
 Was lametable and petws for til her,  
 Of knychtys wich in diuers placis fere  
 Wondit war, and fallyng to and fro,  
 3hit galyotys folk war xx thousand mo 3268  
**T** he blak knycht than on to hyme-self he said  
 "Remembir the, how yhow haith ben araid,

and proves him  
 self a better war  
 rior than might  
 have been ex  
 pected of one so  
 old

Galhot's folk are  
 beaten

King Valydone  
 comes to support  
 them

Angus comes to  
 aid Arthur's men

Clamedyus comes  
 to aid Galhot's  
 men

Ywons encoun  
 ters Clamedyus

Great clamour  
 and lamentable  
 cries on either  
 side

The black knight  
 bids himself re  
 member love's  
 power over him,

- Ay fen ye hour that yow was makid knyght,  
*With* love, azane quhois powar & whois mycht 3272  
 Yow haith no strenth, yow may It not endur,  
 Noi ȝhit non vthir eithly creatur ,  
 And bot two thingis ar the to amend,  
 and that only his lady's mercy or his life's end can amend him 3276  
 Thi ladice mercy, or thi lyvys end  
 And well yhow wot that on to hir prefens,  
 [fol 43 b] Til hir estat, nor til hir excellens,  
 Thi feblines neuermore is able  
 For to attan, ſche is ſo honorable 3280  
 And fen no way yow may ſo hie extend,  
 He counsels him ſelf to ſtrive for her thanks,  
 My verray confell is, that yow pretend  
 This day, (ſen yow becummyne aȝt hir knyght  
 Of hir comand, and fechtit in hir fycht), 3284  
 And well yow ſchaw, ſen yow may do no mor,  
 That of refone ſche ſal the thank tharfore ,  
 Of euery poynt of cowardy yow ſcham,  
 and to be aſhamed of every poynt of cowardice 3288  
 And in til armys purches the ſum nam "  
*With* that of love in to o new deſin  
 Swift as a croſs bow bolt he ſeeks the field  
 His ſpere he ſtraucht, and ſwift as any wyre  
*With* al his forð the neſt feld he foght ,  
 His ful ſtrenth in armys thar he vroght, 3292  
 In to the feld ruſching to and fro,  
 Doune goth the man, doune goth the horſ alſo ,  
 Sum throw the ſcheld is perſit to the hart,  
 Sum throw the hed, he may It not aſtart 3296  
 His bludy fuerd he dreuch, that carwit ſo  
 His ſword carves the head from ſome and cuts the arms of others in twain  
 Fro ſum the hed, and ſum the arm in two ,  
 Sum in the feld fellit is in fwoñ,  
 Throw ſum his fuerd goth to the ſadill doune 3300  
 His ſois waren abaſit of his dedis,  
 His mortell ſtrok ſo gretly for to dred is ,  
 Whar thai hyme ſaw, wit/un a lytall ſpace,  
 When his foes ſee him they leave the place for dread of death  
 For dread of ded, thai levyng hyme the place, 3304  
 That many o ſtrok ful oft he haith forlorñ ,  
 The ſpedy horſ away the knyght hath born

- In to his wyrking neuermore he feft,  
 Nor non abaid he makith, nor areft 3308  
 His falowis, fo in his knyghted affuryd,  
 Thai ar recomfort, thar manhed is recoueryt,  
 And one thar fois ful ferfly thar foght,  
 Thar goth the lyf of many o knyght to nocht 3312  
 So was the batell wonderful to tell,  
 Of knyghtis to fe the multitud that fell,  
 That pety was til ony knyght to fen  
 The knyghtis lying gaping on the gren 3316  
 The blak knyght ay continewit fo faft,  
 Whill ' many one, difcumfit at the laft,  
 Are fled, and planly of the feld thei pas  
 And galyot haith wondyr, for he was 3320  
 Of mor powar, and askit at them qwhy  
 As cowntis thar fled fa fchamfully?  
 Than faith o knyght, for wondit in the biayne,  
 " Who lykith, he may Retwrn azayne 3324  
 Fiome qwhens we come, merwals for to fee,  
 That in his tyme neuer fch fauch hee "  
 " Marwell," quod he, " that dar I boldly fay  
 Thay may be callit, and quhat thar ar, I pray? " 3328  
 " Schir, in the feld forfuth thar is o knyght,  
 That only throw his body and his mycht  
 Wencuffith all, that thar may non fuffen  
 His firokis, thar ar fo fueows and ken 3332  
 He farth as o lyone or o beyre,  
 Wod in his rag, for fch is his affere  
 Nor he the knyght in to the armys Red,  
 Wich at the first assemble in this fted  
 Wencuffith all, and had the holl renown,  
 He may to this be no comparyfoune,  
 Fore neuer he feftith fen the day vas goñ,  
 Bot euermore continewit in to one " 3340

His knightly  
deeds assure his  
fellows

It was pitiful to  
see the knight's  
gaping upon the  
green

[Fol 41 a ]

Galiot asks his  
men why they  
flee

A knight replies  
that whoever  
likes may go and  
see marvels

Galiot asks, what  
marvels and the  
knight tells him  
there is a knight  
who vanquishes  
all

who fares as a  
lion or a bear

to whom the red  
knight bears no  
comparison

Galot say s i e  
will go and see

Quod galot, "in nome of god and we  
Al, be tymc, the futhfastnes<sup>1</sup> fal see "

Galot is armed  
rallies the flyers  
and encourages  
his men

[T]han he in armys that he had is gon,  
And to the feld w<sup>th</sup> hyme azane hath ton 3344

Al the fleazis, and foundyne [in]<sup>1</sup> sich aray

His folk, that ner discumfyt al war thay ,

Bot quhen thai saw cummyne our the plan

Thar lord, thai tuk sich hardement azañ, 3348

They shout their  
wai cries

That thar effenzers lowd thai gon to cry

He chargit tham to go, that ware hyme by,

Stiaucht to the feld, w<sup>th</sup> al thar holl forð ,

And thai, the wich that sparit not the horð, 3352

All redy wai to fillyng his command,

And freschly went, w<sup>th</sup>owten more demand

Throw qwich thar folk recoueryt haith thai place,

All think a new  
host is coming

For al the feld preswmyt that thar was 3356

O new oft, one such o wyð thai soght ,

Arthur s folk de  
termine rather to  
die than fly

Whar arthurs folk had passith al to nocht,

Ne war that thai the better war ilkoñe,

And at thai can them vtiaily dispoñe 3360

[Fol 41 b]

Rathar to dee than flee, in thar entent,

And of the blak knyght haith sich hardyment ,

For at al perell, al harmys, and myfcheif,

In tyme of ned he can tham al ralef 3364

[T]har was the batell dangerous & ftrong,

Gret was the pres, bat<sup>h</sup> perellus & throng ,

The black knight  
is borne to the  
ground

The blak knyght is born on to the ground,

His horð hyme falyth, that fellith dethis wound 3368

The six comrades  
go to the earth

The vi falowis, that falowit hyme al day,

Sich was the pres, that to the erth go thay ,

And thar in myd among his ennemys

He was about enclofit one sich wyð 3372

None know  
where he is

That quhare he was non of [his] falowis knew,

Nor mycht nocht cum to help hyme, nore refkew

<sup>1</sup> The sense, but not the metre, requires "in "

- And thus among his ennemys allon  
 His nakid fuerd out of his hond haith ton , 3376 He defends him  
 And thar he p<sup>re</sup>wit his weitew & his firenth , self with his  
 For thar was none w<sup>ith</sup>in the fueidis lenth sword  
 That came, bot he goith to confusioun  
 Thar was no helme, thar was no habirounne, 3380 No helm nor ha  
 That may resit his fuerd, he smytith so , bergeon may re  
 One euery fyd he helpith to and fro, sist his sword  
 That al about the compas thar mycht ken ,  
 The ded hors lyth vrslyng w<sup>ith</sup> the men 3384  
 Thar hyme affalzeing bot<sup>h</sup> w<sup>ith</sup> scheld & spere,  
 And he azane , as at the stok the bere  
 Snybbith the hardy houndes that ar ken,  
 So farith he , for neuer mycht be fen 3388  
 His fuerd to rest, that in the gret rout  
 He rowmyth all the compas hyme about  
 [A]nd galot, beholding his manhed,  
 W<sup>ith</sup>in his self wonderith of his ded, 3392 Galot wonders at  
 How that the body only of o knyght his deeds ,  
 Haith sich o firenth, haith sich affere & mycht ,  
 Than said he thus, "I wald not that throw me,  
 Or for my caus, that such o knyght fuld dee, 3396 and says that  
 To conquer all this world that is so larg " such a knight  
 His hors than can he w<sup>ith</sup> his spuris charg, shall not die on  
 A gret trunfioun In to his hond hath ton, his account  
 And in the thikeft of the p<sup>re</sup>st is goñ, 3400  
 And al his folk chargit he to fess  
 At his command thar levyng al the p<sup>re</sup>st ,  
 And quhen he had departit all the rout,  
 He said, "fir knyght, havith now no dout " 3404  
 Wich answert, "I have no caus to dred "  
 "3is," quod he, "fa euer god me sped,  
 Bot apone fut quhill 3e ar fechtand here,  
 And yhow defendith apone sich manere, 3408  
 So hardely, and ek so lyk o knyght,  
 I fal my self w<sup>ith</sup> al my holl mycht  
 and assures the  
 black knight that  
 He will himself  
 warrant him from  
 all harm

[Fol 42 a ]

	Be yhour defens, and varand fra al harmys , Bot had yhe left of worchup In til armys, 3412 What I have don I wold apone no wyß , Bot fen yhe ar of knychthed fo to prys, þhe fal <sup>1</sup> no maner causþ have for to dred
He offers him as many horses as he needs and proposes that they shall never again part	And fet yhour horþ be falit at this ned, 3416 Displeþ yhow not, for quhy 3e fal not want Als many as yhow lykith for to hawnt , And I my-felf, I fal yhowr sqwyar bee, And, if god will, neuer more fal wee 3420
He lights from his horse and gives him to Lancelot who thanks him	Depart ,” with that, anon he can to lycht Dounne frome his horþ, and gaf hyme to y <sup>e</sup> knycht The lord he thonkit, and the horþ hath ton, And als fo fresch one to the feld is gon, 3424 As at no strokis he that day had ben His falowis glad, one horþ that hath hym fen, To galhot one vthir horþ thai broght , And he goith one, and frome the feld he focht, 3428
Galhot returns to his host, and chooses a band of 10 000 men	And to the plan quhar that his oftis were , And brandymagus chargit he to stere Efter hyme, withun a lytill space, And x thousand he takyne with hym haþ 3432 Toward the feld onon he can to Rid, And chargit them befor ye oft to byd
The trumpets clamours, horns, and bugles are sounded.	Wp goith the trumpetis, and the claryownis, Hornys, bugillis blawing furtþ thar sownis, 3436 That al the cuntre refownit hath about ,
Arthur's folk despair	Than arthurns folk var in dispar & dout, That hard the noys, and saw the multitud Of fresch folk , thai cam as thai war wod 3440
The sable knight, still fearless,	[B]ot he that was withowten any dred, In fabill cled, and saw the gret ned, Affemblyt al his falowis, and arayd ,
harangues his men, saying,	And thus to them in manly termes said 3444

<sup>1</sup> MS “falt”

- "What that ȝe ar I know not yhour estat,  
 Bot of manhed and worchip, well I wat,  
 Out throuch this wald yhe aw to be *commendit*,  
 This day ȝe have fo knyghtly yhow defendit 3448  
 And now yhe fee how that, azanis the *nycht*,  
 Yhour ennemys pretendit *with* thar myght  
 Of multitud, and *with* thar new oft,  
 And *with* thar buglis and thar wyndes boft 3452  
 Frefchly cummyng In to fch aray,  
 To ifyne yhow one owtrag<sup>1</sup> or affray  
 And now almoft cummyne Is the *nycht*,  
 Quhai for yhour ftrenth, yhour curag, & yhovr *mycht*  
 Yhe occupye in to fo manly wyf,  
 That the worchip of knyghted & empyf  
 That yhe have wonyng, and ye gret renown  
 Be not yloft, be not ylad doune 3460  
 For one hour the fufferyng of diftreß,  
 Gret harm It war yhe tyne the hie enciesß  
 Of vorchip, ferut al this day before  
 And to yhow al my confell is, tharfore, 3464  
 With manly curag, but radour, yhe pretend  
 To met tham fcharply at the fperis end,  
 So that thei feil the cold fperis poynt  
 Out-throw thar fcheldis, in thar hartis poynt 3468  
 So fal thai fynd we ar no-thing affrayt,  
 Whar throuch we fall the well leß be affayt  
 If that we met them fcharply in the berd,  
 The formeß fal mak al the laif afferd." 3472  
 And *with* o woyf thai cry al, "*fir* knyght,  
 Apone yhour manhed, and yhour gret *mycht*,  
 We fal abyd, for no man fhall efchef  
 Frome yhow this day, his manhed for to pref" 3476  
 And to his oft the lord *fir* yvane laid,  
 "Yhe comfort yow, yhe be no-thing affrayd,

[Hol 42 b]

"I know not who  
 ye are but I know  
 that ye ought to  
 be commended.

Ye see how your  
 enemies as night  
 approaches are  
 striving to give  
 you an outrage  
 or a fright.

Employ then  
 your courage so  
 that the honour  
 ye have won be  
 not again lost

Resolve then to  
 meet them  
 sharply without  
 fear so that they  
 may feel the cold  
 spear in their  
 hearts

Perhaps then the  
 foremost will  
 make the rest  
 afraid

They promise to  
 stand firm

Sir Yvan also  
 bids his men be  
 comforted, for  
 that they see all

<sup>1</sup> MS "owtray" See Glossary



	Ws ned no more to dreding of suppriss ,	
the strength of their enemies	We fe the ftrenth of al our ennemys "	3480
	Thus he said, for he wend thai var no mo,	
Sir Gawane, how ever knew better	Bot fir gawan knew well It vas not fo ,	
	For al the oſtis mycht he fe al day,	
	And the gret hoſt he ſaw quhar yat it lay	3484
	[A]nd gahot he can his folk exort,	
Gallot also ex horts his men	Befeching them to be of good comfort,	
	And ſich enconte	

[The rest is wanting]

## NOTES.

---

[It may be observed, once for all, that the expression *in to* repeatedly occurs where we should simply use *in*, and *one to* is in like manner put for *unto*. The ending *-ith* (for *-ed*) is frequent in the past tense, and *-it* (also for *ed*) in the past participle, though this distinction is not always observed. A still more noticeable ending is *ing* (for *-en*) in the infinitive. Observe further that the letters *v*, *u*, and *w* are perfectly convertible, and used quite indiscriminately, so that *wpone* means *upon*, *uthur* means *utur*, i e, *other* *ow* is put for *over*, *wounde* signifies *wound*, etc.]

Page 1, line 1 *The soft morow* This nominative case has no verb. A similar construction occurs in the first lines of Books II and III 4 *Upriseth—his hot cours*, *Upriseth* in his hot course, *chare*, chariot 6 *sent*, sendeth, so also *stant*, standeth, l 326 8 *valkyne*, waken 10 *gyrss*, grass 11 *assay*, assault 13 *wor*, voice 17 *frome I can*, from the time that I did 18 *It deunt me*, it availed me Jamieson gives "*Dow*, l to be able, A S *dugan* (*valere*), to be able 2 to avail, Teut *doogen*"

P 2, l 23 *hewy 3erys*, heavy years 24 "Until that Phoebus had thrice gone through his full circuits" (lit spheres) See the peculiar use of "*pas*" in other places 26 "So, by such a manner, was my lot fated," see l 41 28 *carving can*, did cut 30 *be the morow*, by the morn 36 *neulyngis*, newly, anew 43 *walketh*, walked 50 *I clede*, y-clad, clad Ch has *clede* 54 "No one within thought he could be seen by any wight outside"

P 3, l 56 *clos it*, enclose it, the MS has *closit* 57 *alphest* This reading of the MS is an error for *alcest* See Chaucer, Prologue to Legend of good women, l 511

"The grete goodnesse of the queene Alceste,  
That turned was into a dayesye,"

Alceste being the contracted form of Alcestis 59 *Wnclosing gane*, did uncloze 60 "The bright sun had illumined the spray, and

had updrawn (upwarped) into the lusty air the night's soft (sober) and moist showers, and had made the morning soft, pleasant, and fair" With this difficult passage we should compare 1 2477 66 *Quhill*, until 67 *till ony wicht*, to any wight 69 *Bot gladness til the thoctful, euer mo*, etc., "But, as for gladness to the melancholy man, evermore the more he seeth of it, the more wo he hath" 73 *represent*, represented (accented on the second syllable) 74 *Al day gan be sor*, etc., "All the day, my spirit began to dwell in torment, through sorrow of thought," *be sor*, by sorrow (A S *sorh*) 77 *Ore slep, or how I wot*, "Or sleep, ere I knew how" 83 *A licht*, alighted 84 *levis in to were*, livest in doubt

P 4, 1 91 *be morow*, by morrow, at early morn 99 *set*, although 103 *weil accordinge*, very fitting 105 *long ore he be sonde*, (It is) long ere he be sound 108 *seith, for to consel*, saith, that as for concealing or shewing, etc 109 *althu-best*, lit best of all, see Chaucer's use of *alderfirst*, *alderlast*

P 5, 1 127 *lat be thi nyss dyspare*, let be thy nice (foolish) despair 128 *erth*, earth 134 *schall hym hateing*, shall hate him The termination *-ing* is here the sign of the infinitive mood after the verb *shall* 140 *Set*, although 146 *tak one hand and mak*, undertake and compose, *trety*, treatise, *vnkouth*, unknown, new 151 *belevis*, believe will please thy lady 160 *gis*, thus

P 6, 1 161 *troucht*, truth 163 *discharge*, release 170 *spir*, sphere 171 "At command of a wise (god from) whose vision," etc We sometimes find in old English the adjective "a wise" used absolutely for "a wise man" See "Le Morte Arthur," ed F J Furnivall, 1 3318 175 *tynt*, lost 177 *be this worldis fame* Here again, as in many other passages, "be" expresses with relation to, as regards 185 *yaim*, them 191 *demande*, demur

P 7, 1 198 *Quhill*, until 200 *conten*, treat, lit contain 202 Lancelot is here called the son of Ban, king of Albanak, so again in 1 1447 204 *reds*, read 214 "I will not waste my efforts thereupon" 219 *unwyst*, unwist, unknown 225 *nome*, name 226 *Iwondet to the stak*, very deeply wounded, but there is no doubt about the origin of the phrase See Glossary 228 *astart*, get rid of it, escape it

P 8, 1 240 *dedenyt to aras*, deigned to pluck out 244 *hurtare*, hurter 245 *Iwond*, wounded 248 *ful wicht*, full nimble 251 *of quhome*, by whom 253 *send*, sent 257 *passing vassolag*, surpassing prowess 260 "Passed down into the fell caves" 264 *tane*, taken 266 *cure*, care

P 9, 1 267 *gart be maid*, caused to be made 271 *auoue*, vow 275 *in to that gret Revere*, in that great river 284 *o gret confusone of pupil and knyghtis, al enarmyt*, a great medley of people and knights, all fully armed Stevenson actually reads *unarmyt*! 294 *I wil report*, both here and in 1 320 we should almost expect to find "*I nil report*," i e I will not tell It must mean, "I will

tell you why I omit to mention these things" Compare lines 266, 320 297 *thing*, think

P 10, l 305 *veris*, wars 306 *be the wars*, by the ways 307 *Tueax*, betwixt, *acorde*, agreement 314 *mot*, must 316 *stek*, concluded 319 *most compulour*, very great composer 320 "As to whose name I will only say, that it is unfit," etc 326 *stant*, standeth 328 *younng*, rung 330 *beith*, shall be, observe the future sense of *beith* in this place 331 *suet*, sweet 332 "His soul in bliss preserved be on that account" 334 *and this endit* Whether *endit* here refers to *inditing* or *ending* is perhaps doubtful

## NOTES TO BOOK I

P 11, l 336 If by *aryet* is here meant the *sign*, not the constellation of Aries, the day referred to is April 1 or 2, according to Chaucer's "Astrolabie" 338 *bewis*, boughs 340 *makyne gone*, did make 341 *in thei chere*, after their fashion (For *chere*, see Glossary) 345 *auerding to*, belonging to 351 *Anoit*, annoyed 352 *For why*, therefore, so also *for-ith*, therefore 354 *can*, began 355 *sende*, sent 358 *heryng*, hear (infin mood) In the next line it occurs as a present participle 362 *to pas hym*, to go, depart 364 *meit*, to dream of, *aperans*, an appearance, apparition

P 12, l 365 *hore*, hair 375 *vombe*, womb, hence bowels 377 *stert*, started 384 *gert*, caused 390 *trast*, trust 397 *demande*, demur, delay 398 *at*, that

P 13, l 407 *whill*, until 408 *the*, they 410 *to vting*, to know 412 *shauyth al hall*, sheweth all whole 414 *cheseth*, chooseth 422 *shire*, sir 424 *fore to awysing*, in order to take counsel 432 All this about *astronomy* (i e astrology) should be compared with Gower, Conf Amantis, lib vii, ed Pauli, vol 3, pp 133, 134 Arachell, Nembrote, Moises, Hermes are there mentioned as astrologers 433 The MS has "set" (not with a long s) Mr Stevenson has "fet," which would seem right

P 14, l 435 *nembrot*, Nimrod, see *Genesis and Exodus* (E E T S), l 659 436 *herynes*, miswritten for *herymes*, i e Hermes 439 "The which they found were wondrously evil set" 440 *his sweuen met*, dreamed his dream 443 *waryng in to were*, were in doubt 444 *danger*, power to punish, compare Shakspeare's use of the word 457 *but delay*, without delay 459 *stondith hevy cherith*, stood heavy-cheered, was sad in his demeanour 465 *fundyng*, found 466 *depend to*, depend

P 15, l 475 *tone*, taken 478 tell out, speak 487 *preserwith It allan*, is preserved alone 499 *affy in-tyll*, rely upon 500 *farlye*, fail 504 *there clergy*, their science

P 16, l 519 "Through the watery lion, who is also faithful,

and through the leech and eke the water also, and through the counsel of the flower" It is very possible this passage is partly corrupt, l. 520 should certainly be (as may be seen from lines 2010, 2056),

"And through the leich withouten medysyne"

The meanings of lion, leech, and flower are fully explained, however, in lines 2013-2120 524 *weyne*, vain 527 *passid nat his thoght*, left not his thoughts 531 *rachis*, braches, dogs 533 *grewhundis*, grayhounds 536 This purely conjectural line is merely inserted to carry on the sense It is imitated from line 3293 In the next line we should read "grewhundis," rather than "grewhund" 538 *Before ther hedus*, before their heads

P 17, l 545 "All armed, as was then the fashion" 546 *salust*, saluted 548 *lend*, known 549 *leuyth*, liveth 552 The rime requires "land," as in l 638 553 *yald hyme ow*, yield him over 554 *if tribut*, give tribute 566 *recist*, resist, *mone bee*, must be 568 *be*, by 569 *day moneth day*, eie this day month, comp l 1162

P 18, l 577 *faured*, fair-hood, beauty 587 *magre myne entent*, in spite of my intention 591 *nome*, took 593 *Inquere at*, inquire of 596 *wes*, was 599 *vase*, rose 605 *accordith*, agree thereto 606 *recordith*, belongith 607 *visaie*, wiser

P 19, l 621 *This spek I lest*, this I list to speak 622 *varnit*, warned 626 "Though the season of the year was contrary" 627 *atte*, at the 629 *the ilk*, that (Scotch *thilk*) 632 *Melyhalt*, the name both of a hill, and of the town built upon it 636 *affray*, terror 642 *unconquest*, unconquered 643 *cwie*, care

P 20, l 649 *nemmyt*, named 652 *were*, war 654 *or than to morn*, earlier than to morrow 660 *our few*, over few 677 *northest*, north-east

P 21, l 686 *fechteris*, fighters 688 *holde*, held 691 *presone*, prison 697 *peite*, pity 699 The metre of Lancelot's lament is that of Chaucer's "Cuckoo and Nightingale," and was very possibly copied from it *Quhat have y gilt*, what crime have I committed 702 *ago*, gone 703 *nat*, naught, *me gladd*, gladden me 706 *til have*, to have 709 *Sen thelke tyme*, since that time

P 22, l 718 *of remed*, for a remedy 719 *sesith*, ceaseth 723 *with this lady*, by this lady 728 *lansere*, leisure 731 *druerss* *was seie*, divers several ways 733 *bur*, bore 735 *cher*, car 740 *dout*, to fear 745 *but were*, without doubt This expression often occurs

P 23, l 751 *few meny*, small company, an oddly sounding expression to modern ears 753 *cold*, called 754 *hot*, hight, was named 755 *but in his cumpany*, unless he had with him 757 *He saith*, the speaker is the captain of the hundred knights, called in l 806 *Malegynis* 768 *als fell*, just as many 777 *hard*, heard 781 *clepit*, called

P 24, l 793, *as he wel couth*, as he well knew how 796 *sen*, seen 800 *sen*, since 806 *was hot*, was hight, was named 809 *In myde the borde and festnat in the stell*, In the midst they encounter, and fastened in the steel See l 850 812 *Rout*, company 815 *ferde*, fourth 817 *sauch thar latter batell stur*, saw their last division stir

P 25, l 820 *gane his mortall fell* A word seems here omitted, if after *mortall* we insert *strokis*, the sense will be, "His enemies began his mortall strokes to feel" 825 *worth*, worthy It would improve the metre to read *worthy* (l 875) 828 *In to were*, in war, in the strife 829 *hyme bure*, bore himself 839 *to for*, heretofore 841 *Atour*, i e *at over*, across 842 *assall*, assault The rime shews we should read *asall*, as in l 855 849 *socht atour*, made their way across The use of *seke* in Early English is curious

P 26, l 861 *setith his payn vpone*, devotes his endeavours to 868 *al to kervith*, wholly cutteth in pieces 880 *duk*, dark 883 *tan and slan*, taken and slain

P 27, l 895 It frequently occurs in the MS that a space is left at the beginning of a line, and the first letter of the line is omitted It is evident that the intention was that the first letter should be illuminated, and that this, after all, was not done Here, for instance, the T is omitted, as indicated by the square brackets So also in l 1083, etc 897 *pasng home*, go home 899 *was vent*, had gone 905 *dulay*, delay So also *duclar* for *declare* 907 *comyne*, came 908 *ill paid*, displeased 909 *homly*, humbly Stevenson reads *hourly*, but this is wrong, see l 914 911 *carful*, full of care, unhappy 912 *withouten were*, without doubt 914 *lawly*, lowly 918 *wight*, with (unusual, and perhaps wrong)

P 28, l 924 *lefe*, live 929 *eft*, after 933 *thar longith*, there belongeth 943 *I was for til excuss*, I had some excuse 944 "Because I did behove (to do it), out of very need" 946 *lefe it but*, leave it without 953 *ma*, make 954 *ga*, go 955 *of new*, anew 958 *But if that deth or other lat certan*, "Except it be owing to death or other sure hindrance"

P 29, l 960 *be hold*, be held MS *behold* Stevenson suggested the alteration, which is certainly correct 961 *withthy*, on the condition that 965 *promyt*, promise, *als fast as*, as soon as 973 *ferd*, fourth 982 "Where we shall decide the end of this war"

P 30, l 997 *cag*, cage, prison 999 *amen*, pleasant 1000 *vodus*, woods 1004 *lust*, pleasure (Ch) But the line is obscure, unless we read "*duersitee*" 1009 "His spirit started (owing to the) love (which) anon hath caught him," etc 1012 *at*, that 1014 "(As to) whom they know not at all" 1019 *sen at*, since that 1022 *the dewod*, devoid thee 1024 *and*, if 1026 *be ony mayne*, by any mean

P 31, l 1027 *y red*, I advise 1035 *To warnnyng*, to warn

1040 *our the furdys*, over the fords 1044 *oyer* So in MS, the *y* representing the old *th* (*p*), other 1046 *hufyng*, halting 1050 *worschap*, honour "It were more expedient to maintain your honour" 1058 *wonk*, winked 1062 *vare*, aware

P 32, 1 1064 The meaning of "ferst-conquest" is "first-conquered" (*conquest* being Old Fr for conquered) It is explained in l 1547 as having been a title given to the king whom Galot first subdued 1067 *ferss*, fierce 1070 *suppos*, although 1073 *he*, viz the shrew 1077 The MS has "fched." 1080 *ymen*, I mean 1095 *tars*, takes

P 33, 1 1109 *Galyo*., put for *Galnotes*, the genitive case ending being often omitted, after a proper name especially 1110 *prewit*, proved, tried 1129 *traist*, trust 1131 *that euery thing hath cure*, that (of) everything hath care

P 34, 1 1135 "Aye from the time that the sun began to light the world's face, until he was gone" 1137 *o foris*, perforce 1141 *tans*, takes 1142 *hecht*, promised 1151 *failzeis*, fail 1154 *fet*, fetched 1156 *stant*, standeth 1162 *respuit*, respite 1166 *very knyghtis passng*, weary knights go

P 35, 1 1170 *till speie*, to inquire 1177 *ne wor has worschap*, had it not been for his valour 1187 *quheyar*, whether 1191—4 "And fond," etc These four lines are now for the first time printed They were omitted by Stevenson, evidently by accident 1196 *Per dee* Fr *par Dieu* an oath common in old ballads, generally in the form *pardy* 1197 *vsyt*, used 1198 "I advise that we go unto his arms" (armour) 1203 *harll*, whole

P 36, 1 1207 *abwsyt*, abused, i.e. made an ill use of 1208 *vsyt*, used 1209 *suppos the best that lewis*, even though (it were) the best that lives 1217 *on slep*, asleep The prefix *a-* in English is due to the Saxon *on* 1221 *al to-hurt*, etc See note in Glossary on the word *To-kerwith* 1225 *sauch*, saw, *rewit*, rued, pitied 1233 *one syd a lyt*, a little on one side 1236 *ous mekul*, over much

P 37, 1 1240 *yarof*, thereof 1241 *ruput*, repute, think 1242 *ablare*, abler, readier 1253 Insert a comma after *thret*, and destroy that after *lowe* The meaning perhaps is, "But what if he be appealed to and threatened, and (meanwhile) his heart be elsewhere set to love" Observe that *and* is often the third or fourth word in the sentence it should begin See l 2833 1258 *zhe tyne your lou*, you lose your love 1260 *conclusit*, ended 1265 *mokul*, much 1268 *of new*, anew, again 1273 *pan*, pain

## NOTES TO BOOK II

P 38, 1 1279 *thocht*, anxiety 1284 *apperans*, i.e. vision, as in l 364 1295 *aqwynt*, acquainted, Burns uses *acquent* 1297 *com*, coming

P 39, l 1316 "So far out of the way you go in your course"  
Compare l 1797 1317 "Thy ship, that goeth upon the stormy  
surge, nigh of thy revels (i e because of thy revels) in the gulf it  
falls, where it is almost drowned in the peil" 1321 "In the  
wretched dance of wickedness" See the curious uses of the word  
"daunce" in Chaucer 1323 *the son*, thee soon 1330 *powert*,  
poverty, as *the-selwyne wat*, as thyself knows 1334 *in to spousag*,  
in wedlock

P 40, l 1343 The word *drueiss* is required to complete the line,  
cf l 731 1352 *suppriss*, oppression 1354 *wedwis*, widows  
1367 *that ilke*, that same 1369 *sufferith*, makest to suffer

P 41, l 1379 Eccles iv 9, 10 1387 *yow mone*, thou must  
1392 *her efter leif*, hereafter live 1401 A comma is scarcely needed  
after "*saprens*" It means "The fear of the Lord is the beginning  
of wisdom" Prov ix 10

P 42, l 1409 *to ryng under his pess*, to reign under His peace,  
by His permission Roquefort gives *pais*, licence, permission 1420  
*aiour*, error 1427 *leful*, lawful

P 43, l 1447 Ban, king of Albanak, was Lancelot's father  
See l 202, 1450 1474 The MS has "affit"

P 44, l 1491 *tak the balt apone themselves*, turn their backs  
1500 *yewyne*, given 1504 *till*, to, redundant 1506 *stand aw*,  
stand in awe So also in l 2684 The same expression occurs in  
*The Bruce*, iii 62, ed Pinkerton, p 42, ed Jamieson, and also in  
*Havelok*, l 277, where the word *in*, supplied from conjecture, should  
be struck out

P 45, l 1537 *throw his peple*, by his people 1541 *Thus falrith*  
*not*, etc, "Except wise conduct falleth to a king" 1546 It may  
be right to retain the spelling of the MS—"kinghe," for, though  
strange and unusual, it occurs again in l 2527

P 46, l 1556 *wende*, weened 1560 *in to his contrare*, against  
him. 1568 *trewis*, truce 1575 *his powar*, his chief army 1576  
*by the yhere*, by the ear, privately 1579 *cold*, called, as in l 753

P 47, l 1597 *home fair*, go home 1608 *And*, redundant in  
modern English For many of the precepts given by Amytans the  
author must have been indebted to Gower, or, at any rate, to the  
author of the *Secreta Secretorum* See Gower, Conf Amantis, ed  
Pauli, lib vii, vol 3, pp 152—159 And cf Tyrwhitt's note to  
the Canterbury Tales, l 16915, and Warton's Hist Eng Poetry

P 48, l 1628 *lest*, least, low, law It requires care to dis-  
tinguish the two meanings of *low*, viz love and law 1633 *Iug*,  
judge

P 49, l 1660 *sar*, sorely 1666 A line omitted The inserted  
line is purely conjectural

P 50, l 1704 *pupelle*, people 1708 *Imyrys*, envious 1716  
*longuth*, belongeth 1717 *the lykith*, it likes thee, thou art pleased

P 51, l 1724 *betak til hyme*, confer upon him 1730 *essy*,



easy 1736 *for the nouns*, for the occasion See White's Ormulum  
 1739 *vn to the northu pur yow if*, unto the worthy poor thou give  
 1742 *set nocht of gret substans*, though not of great value 1754  
*alowit*, approved of

P 52, l 1761 *tynath*, loseth 1763 *atonis*, at once 1771 *re saue*, receive 1773 *with tuo*, also

P 53, l 1791 *well less, al-out*, much less, altogether The punctuation hereabouts in Stevenson's edition is very wild 1795 *wys*, vice, *the wrechatness*, thy miserliness 1797 *pass the cours*, go thy way 1808 *wrech*, wretch, but here used instead of *miser* 1812 *viss*, vice 1814 *ben y-knowith*, are known (to be) (?) 1815 *dant*, daunt 1822 *the ton*, the one

P 54, l 1832 *beis iar*, beware 1834 *colde*, cool 1852 *onys*, once 1855 *whai throw*, through which, whereby

P 55, l 1864, *awn*, own The metre requires the more usual form *awn* 1879 *dispolzeth*, despoileth 1881 *For quhi*, wherefore In this line the MS has "scrkth"

P 56, l 1899 *most nedis*, must needs *Ye = the*, i e The one, He 1909 *Mot*, might 1917 *in* should be *into*, as elsewhere

P 57, l 1940 *havith*, hath 1950 *hot*, hight, is called

P 58, l 1966 *wnepunist*, unpunished 1990 *omend*, amend, *spill*, destroy

P 59, l 2011 *ayne*, are 2012 *duclar*, declare, so also *dulay* for delay 2017 *the god werray*, the Very God

P 60, l 2036 *For quhi*, wherefore 2040 *mad*, made 2041 *clergy*, science 2062 *be the mycht dewyne*, by the might divine

P 61, l 2069 *far*, fare 2079 *helyth frome the ground*, heals from the bottom, i e effectually 2100 *not cessith*, who ceaseth not

P 62, l 2107 *Ne was*, were it not for, *hantly*, hearty, it occurs again four lines below 2135 *yneuch*, enough He means he will ask but one question more

P 63, l 2148 *To passing home*, to go home 2162 *the xxiiij day* The first *i* in the MS is like a "v" smudged over, we should read "xxiiij," as in l 2155 The contraction is to be read *four and twentieth*, not *twenty fourth*, so also in l 610

P 64, l 2190 *hal dure*, hall door 2192 *o vome most for to comend*, a journey most to be commended 2194 *lowith*, love

P 65, l 2212 *the fewar eschef thay*, the less they achieve 2229 "For no adventure will prove so great, that ye shall not achieve it" 2241 *whill*, until

P 66, l 2247 *galot*, so in MS 2265 *grant mercy*, great thanks, *Fr grand merci* 2267 *quhy*, because

P 67, l 2279 *thuthingis*, tidings, probably an error of the scribe for *tuthingis* Stevenson has *chachingis*! 2284 *al out*, altogether 2304 *oft syss*, oft-times See Glossary (*Syss*) 2306 *dante*, daunt 2310 *tithandis*, tidings, compare l 2279

P 68, l 2323 *aw*, owe 2328 *fantassy*, fancy, notion 2334

for no why, for no reason 2337 *mon I fawr*, must I go 2338 *our son It waure*, over soon it were 2342 *For-guhy*, because

P 69, l 2352 *nor* has the force of *but* 2366 *be ony men*, by any means 2368 *on of tho*, one of them 2375 *chen of low*, chain of love 2376 *and if zhe may deren*, and if you may declare

P 70, l 2409 *hartly raquer*, heartily require 2416 *gas ordan*, cause to be provided

P 71, l 2428 *prewaly disspone*, privily dispose 2436 *ellis-guhat*, I suppose this means, "he was on fire elsewhere" 2448 *hamlynnes*, homeliness 2452 *fest throw al the zher eliche*, feast through all the year alike

P 72, l 2469 *commend*, commended 2470 *he drywith*, he driveth, pursueth The reading is not *dr awith*, as in Stevenson

### NOTES TO BOOK III

P 73, l 2471 This line is too long, and the sense imperfect, but there is no doubt about the reading of the MS 2474 *Awodith*, expels 2475 *doune valis*, falls down, for it is evident that *valis* is an error for *fulis*, the mistake having arisen from confusion with the succeeding line 2480 *clad*, clad 2487 *byggoun*, begun In the next line Stevenson has *sown*, but the true reading is *Rown*, run, as in l 2820 2492 *barnag*, baronage, nobility

P 74, l 2522 *but dula*, without delay, *the*, they 2524 *thar com*, their coming 2530 *in the dogre*, in its (due) degree

P 75, l 2545 *Or that*, ere that 2552 *he and hate*, high and hot 2558 *the can*, they began

P 76, l 2574 *hyme mak*, prepare himself, or perhaps simply, make (for the field), go 2582 *helmys last*, *last* clearly means *laced*, see l 2250 2594 *3hit*, although 2599 *dout*, fear 2600 *is assemblit*, made an attack The peculiar use of *assemble* must always be borne in mind 2601 *erd*, earth

P 77, l 2612 *found till gwyans*, go to Gwyans 2614 *til esquyris ther sewyt*, after Esquyris they followed 2619 *one to the melle socht*, made their way to the *mêlée* 2627 *don bore*, borne down 2630 Fifty thousand It would appear that Galiot had 40,000, of whom 10,000 were held *in reserve*, so that in l 2632 only 30,000 are mentioned See l 2569, 2647

P 78, l 2646 *ten*, sorrow, vexation 2656 *resauf*, receive 2663 *at thar come*, at their coming, *led*, put down 2670 *bidng one the bent*, abide on the grassy plain

P 79, l 2679 "That, despite their efforts, they must needs retire" 2684 *stud aw*, stood in awe, see note to l 1506 2693, 4 These lines do not rhyme But we should certainly read *felde*, *erde* having slipped in from confusion with l 2691 The knight of Galloway goes to the field, i e joins battle

P 80, l 2712 *On ayar half*, on either side The MS omits *to*  
 2713 *of*, off 2714 *noiss*, nose 2731 *Bot nocht forthr*, But not  
 on that account

P 81, l 2754 *harmys*, loss 2761 *aucht to ses*, ought to  
 cease 2765 *at*, that 2768 *my lef*, my leave, permission 2770  
*in to cage*, in prison

P 82, l 2802 *commandit*, commended

P 83, l 2819 *one athir half*, on either side 2820 *rown*, run  
 2821 *howyns*, an ungrammatical form, perhaps *howyng* is meant  
 2827 *one hycht*, on height, i e aloud 2829 *sterith*, stirreth  
 2833 "The lady of Melyhalt made (her way) to him, and im-  
 mediately caused his couch to be placed before a window" Mr  
 Stevenson reads,

"Of Melyhalt the lady to hyme maid  
 Incontinent his couche, and gart he ' had," etc

i e "The lady immediately made his bed for him," etc 2841 *wen*  
*cust*, vanquished After this word we should perhaps insert "at," as  
 in l 3336

P 84, ll 2877-2880 These lines were printed by me for the first  
 time, four lines having been here again omitted by Mr Stevenson  
 2880 *but weyne*, without doubt 2884 *to led and stere* to lead and  
 direct

P 85, l 2893 *Endlong*, along 2894 *weryne*, were 2913 *let*,  
 hinder

P 86, l 2925 *dulay*, delay, as in several other places 2938  
*feh*, effect 2944 *zude*, went 2947 *far*, welfare

P 87, l 2964 *Whill*, until 2970 *ho*, stop, pause 2971 *ver-*  
*yng In affray*, were in terror 2972 *rovm*, room 2978 *socht*,  
 made his way 2984 *dispoint*, intends, but we must insert "not,"  
 to complete the sense and the metre

P 88, l 2998 *eschevit* (used passively), is achieved 3003 *o*  
*knycht*, a single knight 3005 *tais*, takes 3006 *fays*, foes 3013  
*onys* or *the nycht*, once ere the night 3015 *that zhe have gult* to  
*mend*, to amend that in which ye have trespassed

P 89, l 3052 *Do at I may*, Do that which I can

P 90, l 3065 This line is printed by Mr Stevenson,

"Curag can [ ] encreasing in his hart",

but it is not clear that a word is wanting, for the metre is as com-  
 plete as in many other lines, whilst, as regards the sense, "the  
 knycht" is probably a nominative without a verb, and l 3065 means,  
 "Courage did increase in his heart" Or the reader may, if he  
 pleases, insert "fele" Compare l 3058 3066 *lap*, leaped 3079  
 Observe the omission of the word "neither" in this line 3080  
*pernt*, pierced 3086 *onan*, anon A'S *on-an*

<sup>1</sup> But the MS has "be," also "melyhat" instead of "Melyhalt"

<sup>2</sup> MS has "to"

P 91, l 3093 *In samyne will*, with like intent 3100 *bet ax-ampyl*, better example 3104 *bot*, unless, *me fall*, befall me 3108 *one vthur*, another 3120 *send*, sent 3121 *lewit one*, left one 3122 *but mercy*, without mercy

P 92, l 3134 *deliuer besynes*, clever readiness 3136 *aray*, livery 3140 *Ee*, eye 3146 *the morow neu*, the early morning 3160 *deith*, dead 3162 *Suppos*, although

P 93, l 3178 *Nor*, we now use *but* 3184 *ward*, see Glossary *tho*, then

P 94, l 3200 *relewt*, relieved 3201 *diuerss placis sere*, as *sere* = *diuerss*, one of these words is redundant So in l 3266 3207 *ewil auysut*, ill advised 3217 "And if it so happen, that they be discomfited"

P 95, l 3240 *leuch*, laughed, *sarues*, service 3246 *al haill*, all whole 3248 *r thousand mo*, ten thousand, and more 3259 *abaud*, delay 3263 *aucht*, eight 3265 *petus for til hei*, piteous to hear

P 96, l 3297 *dreuch*, drew 3299 *fellit*, fallen 3304 *le-ying*, leave

P 97, l 3307 *sest*, ceased 3321 *askit at*, asked of 3331 *Wencussith*, vanquisheth 3340 *in to one*, continually, which is sometimes the sense of A S *on an*

P 98, l 3353 *to jillyng*, to fulfil 3357 *soght*, came on, see Glossary 3359 *Ne war*, etc, "Had it not been that they were, individually, the better men" 3364 *ralef*, relieve 3368 *fellith*, feedeth

P 99, l 3384 *vs slyng*, wrestling, *i e* entangled with, a strong expression 3385 *aswalzeing*, assail 3390 *rowmyth*, roometh, emptieth 3403 *departit*, parted 3404 *dout*, fear

P 100, l 3412 *left*, failed 3423 *The lord*, *i e* Gaiot, as I suppose, Mr Stevenson has, "The Lord" 3430 *stere*, to stir, move, come

P 101, l 3450 *pretendit*, endeavour 3457 *occupye*, employ 3461 *For one hour*, etc, "On account of suffering distress for one hour" 3470 *the well less*, much less, see l 1791 3471 *berd*, beard 3473 *o uoyse*, one voice 3475 *eschef froine yhow*, not, win from you, but, *withdrew* himself from you See Glossary

P 102, l 3481 *wend thar var no mo*, thought they were no more 3487. *And sich enconter*, and such encounter These three words are written at the bottom of the page as a catchword The rest of the MS is wanting

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[As many of the words occurring in "Lancelot" are well explained either in Jamieson's Scottish Dictionary or in Roquefort's "Glossaire de la langue Romane," I have frequently referred to these works by means of the letters J and R. Other abbreviations, as ON for Old Norse, Goth for Moso Gothic, Su-G for Sino-Gothic, etc., will be readily understood. Ch has also been used as an abbreviation for Chaucer. The various French, Danish, German, and other words referred to in the Glossary are merely added by way of illustration, to indicate in what direction a word may be most easily traced up. To ensure accuracy as far as possible, I have verified every foreign word by the aid of dictionaries, referring for Gothic words to my own Glossary, edited for the Philological Society, for Sino-Gothic words, to Thre's Glossarium, for Icelandic words, to Egilsson, and for Old French words, to Roquefort and Burguy. Whatever errors occur below may thus, I hope, be readily traced.]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>Abaid, } delay, tarrying, 1882,<br/>         Abyde, } 2147, 3069, 3308<br/>         A S <i>abidan</i>, J<br/>         Abasit, } abashed, humbled, di-<br/>         Abasyt, } spirited, cast down,<br/>         Abasyt, } 378, 1452, 2664<br/>         Abasit of, dispirited by, 3301<br/>         R <i>abanser</i><br/>         Abasit of (used passively), were<br/>         dispirited by, 2243<br/>         Abraid, awoke, 1231, (Ch) A S<br/> <i>on bredan</i><br/>         Abwsyt (abused), made an ill use<br/>         of, 1207<br/>         Access, a fever, or better, a fit of<br/>         the ague, Lat <i>accessus febris</i>,<br/>         (Wright's Glossary), 31<br/>         Accorde, to agree with, 1526<br/>         Fr <i>s'accorder</i><br/>         Accordith, is suitable for, becomes,<br/>         1679, 1951, agree therewith,<br/>         605, is useful for, is fit for, 1204</p> | <p>According for, suitable for, 1512<br/>         R <i>accendant</i><br/>         Adred, terrified, 378, 2664 A S<br/> <i>on drédan</i>, to dread<br/>         Affek, effect, 382 Cf <i>Fek</i><br/>         Afferd, afraid, 3472 A S <i>afereð</i>,<br/> <i>aféran</i><br/>         Affere, warlike preparation, 985,<br/>         aspect, bearing, 3043, 3334,<br/>         3394 See J, who makes it<br/>         of Teutonic origin, but it may<br/>         be no more than the O Fr<br/> <i>afeire, afaire</i> = state, condition,<br/>         as explained by Burguy<br/>         Affenith, belongs to, suits, 1550<br/>         Afferns, is suitable, 1690, 1961<br/>         R <i>aferrer</i><br/>         Affrait, terrified, from the verb<br/> <i>Affray</i> (Ch), 2462, 3469 R<br/> <i>effraer</i><br/>         Affray, terror, fright, 636, 3454<br/>         Fr <i>effroi</i></p> |
|---|--|

- Affy in till, trust to, rely upon, 499, 1394 R *affier*
- Afyre, on fire, 30, 251, hence, used allegorically, in love, 2436
- Agrewit, } aggrieved, vexed,  
Aggrewit, } 1308, 1538, angry,  
          } enraged, 2618 R *agrever*
- Ago, gone, 159 A S *of-gan*
- Aire, are, 1732
- Algat, Algat, always, 1996, 1792  
Gothic *gatwô*, a street, way
- Al magre thine, in spite of thee, 115 An expression compounded of A S *al*, wholly, *maugre* (Fr *mal gre*), ill-will, and *thine* (A S *thin*, the gen case of *thû*, thou)
- Al out, altogether, 1676, 1791, etc  
Alowit, approved, 1754 Fr *al louer*
- Als, (1) as, (2) also
- Amen, } pleasant, 64, 999 Lat  
Ameyne, } *amœnus*
- Anarmyt, fully armed, 545, 620, 2219, 2771 See *Enarmyt*
- And, if, 1024, 1591, and if (= an if), if, 2376
- Anerly, only, 1476, 1696 A S *dén lîc*
- Anoit, } annoyed, vexed, 351,  
Anoyt, } 2244
- Anoyt, annoyeth, 1407
- Anterous, (for Aunterous, the shortened form of *Aventurous*), adventurous, 2618 Fr *aventure*
- Aparalt, apparelled, 338
- Aperans, an appearance, a vision, 364 So also Apperans, 1284
- Apone, upon, 765, etc
- Appetit, desire, 2722 Ch has *appetite* as a verb, to desire
- Aqwynt, acquainted, 1295 Buins uses *acquient*
- Aras, to pluck out, 240 Fr *ar-racher*
- Arad, disordered, afflicted, 3270
- See *Araye* in Halliwell The examples there given shew that to *araye* sometimes actually signifies to *disorder*
- Arrest, stop, delay, 678, 3072, 3308 Fr *arret*
- Arly, early, 4, 384, 975 A S *arlice*
- Artillery, implements of warfare, 2538 See R *artillerie* Compare 1 Samuel, xx 40
- Assay, (1) assault, trial, 11, 35, 112, 712, attack, 537, 2662  
As a verb, to assault, attack, assail, 570, 1044 Fr *assaillir*  
(2) to essay, attempt, 2936, to test, 478, 982 Fr *essayer*
- Assaid, } assaulted, 1224, 2641  
Assayt, }
- Assall, assault, attack, 842 We should perhaps read "assail," as in l 855
- Assalzeing, assail (3 *pers plural*), 3385
- Assemblay, an assembling of knights for a combat, a tournament, 267
- Assemble, a hostile meeting, combat, battle, 978, 3336 See J
- Assemblyug, encountering, 2588
- Assemblyng on, attacking, 2956
- Assey, to test, 478 See *Assay*
- Astart, to start away from, hence to escape from, avoid, 228, 3296 Ch has *asterte*
- At, that, 1019, etc Compare Dan *at*, O N *at*
- Atour, at over, i e across, 841, 849, 873, in excess, in addition, besides, 1775
- Ather, either, 2629, 2819, 3264 A S *dégther*
- Atte, at the, 627, 1055
- Aucht, eight, 3263 Compare Ger *acht*
- Auentur, adventure, 601
- Auer, ever, 273, etc

- Auerding to, belonging to (?), 345  
The sense seems to point to the  
A S *and weardian*, to be present,  
Goth *and wairths*, present
- Aventur, Auentoure, adventure,  
80, 222
- Aw, owe, deserve, the present  
tense of the verb of which *ought*  
is the past tense, 3447 A S  
*ah, dhte*
- Awalk, awake, 1049 Goth *wahan*  
The form *awalk* occurs in Dun-  
bar,  
"Awalk, luvans, out of your slomer  
ing"  
(The Thistle and the Rose)
- Awant, boast, 2136 As a verb,  
1588, and as a reflexive verb,  
2196, 2386 F1 *se vanter* Ch  
has *avante*
- Awin, own, 89 A S *agen*
- Awodith, maketh to depart, 2474  
See *Avord* in Nares' Glossary,  
edited by Halliwell and Wright
- Awow, } vow, 234, 242, 246  
Awoue, } Ch has *avoue*
- Awys, consideration, advisement,  
558
- Awyrð the, advise thee, consider,  
1913
- Awyrð, } to consider, 424, 429  
Awyrðing, } Fr *s'aviser*
- Awysment, advisement, considera-  
tion, 360, 680
- Ay, ever, continually, 1135, 1486  
A S *á*
- Ayar (*written instead of Athar*),  
either, 2712
- Ayre, are, 2011
- Ayanis, 744, } against  
Azanis, 1164, 2283, } A S *ongean*
- Azane, Azaine, again, 3253, 380
- Bachlerns, bachelors, a name given  
to novices in arms or arts, 1689  
See *bachelor* in R.
- Banais, bannais, 770
- Bartes, 2897 }  
Bartus, 3041 } See *Bertes*
- Barnag, baronge, nobility, 2492  
See *banner* in R
- Batell, a battalion, division of an  
army, 784, 808, etc
- Be, by A S *be*
- Behest, promise, 2766 A S *behes*
- Behufis, behoves, 579 A S *be*  
*hofan*, often used impersonally
- Behuf, } it behoves, it is neces-  
Behwif, } sary (to do), 944, 2342  
apparently contracted from *be-  
hufs*
- Beleif, in *phr ore* belief = be-  
yond belief, 112
- Bent, a grassy plain (properly a  
coarse grass, in German, *bunne*),  
2670 J
- Bertes, a parapet, a tower, 1007,  
1118, 2815 R *betesche*, from  
Low Latin *brestachia*
- Betak til, to confer upon, 1724  
A S *be-tæcan*, in the sense, to  
assign
- Betakyne, betoken, 2014 A S  
*be tæcan*, in the sense, to shew
- Bewis, boughs, 338 A S *boh*
- Bills, letters, 142 Fr *billet*
- Blindis, blindness (?), 1903
- Borde, to meet in a hostile manner,  
encounter, 809 We find in R  
*border*, to joust, fight with lances  
Compare Fr *aborder*, and Spen-  
ser's use of *bord* See *hon de* in  
Burguy
- Bot, (1) but, (2) without In  
general, *without* is expressed by  
*but*, and the conjunction by  
*bot*, but this distinction is  
occasionally violated
- Bown, ready, prepared, 1036  
O N *búunn*, past part. of *búa*,  
to prepare Su -G *boa*, to pre-  
pare J
- Bretis, fortifications, forts, 874,

- "properly wooden towers or castles *Bretachnæ*, castella lignea, quibus castra et oppida muniebantur, Gallis *Bretesque* Du Cange" Jamieson See *Bertes*
- Bukis, books, 434, 1862
- Burdish, boards, i e tables, 2198  
A S *bórd*, which means—1 a plank, 2 a table, etc
- Bur, bore, 733, 778
- But, without, common in the phrase *but were*, without doubt
- But if, unless, except, 958
- Byhecht, } promised, 1485, 2791  
Byhicht, } A S *be hætan*
- Byknow, notorious for, known to be guilty of, 1627 Compare "I *know* nothing *by* myself" (1 Cor iv 4) Compare also Dan *bekinde*, to make known
- By, near at hand, 1535, 2916
- Cag, } cage, prison, 997, 2770  
Cage, }
- Can, an auxiliary verb, used nearly as we now use *did*
- Careldis, plural of Careld, a merry-making, revel (?), 1318 "*Car-aude*, réjouissance," and "*Can o-ler*, danser, se divertir, mener une vie joyeuse" Roquefort
- Catfis, wretches, 2102 R *cantif*, *captif* Compare Ital *cattivo*
- Chalmer, chamber, 2281, 2308, 2427, 2808 J
- Chare, } chariot, 4, 735 R *cher*  
Cher, }
- Charge, load, 693 Fr *charge*, see *discharge* in the line following (694), meaning to shake off a load
- Chargit, gave attention to, 710, 2454 Fr *se charger de*
- Chen, chain, 2375
- Cher, cai, chariot, 735 See *Chare*
- Chere, cheer, demeanour, 83, 341, 695, sad demeanour, outward grief, 2718 Fr *chère*, compare Ital *ciera*, the face, look "*Wepinge* was hyr moste *chere*" (Le Mort Arthur, l 726)
- Cheß, choose, 1611, 1636, 2368  
A S *ceosan*, Ger *kiesen*, Dutch *kieren*
- Clarouns, clarions, 771, 789
- Clepe, to call, 90, 99 A S *clepan*
- Clepit, callest, 93, called, 781
- Clepith, is called, 1919
- Clergy, science, knowledge, 504, 511, 2041 R *clergie*
- Closme, closed, concluded, 316
- Closith, enclosed, shut up, 427
- Cold, called, 753, 1579
- Commandit, commended, 2802
- Comprochit, approached, 2472, 2509
- Conpilour, compiler, poet, 319
- Conquest, conquered, 574, Fyrst-conquest, first conquered, 1545, etc
- Conseruyt, preserved, 332
- Conten (used as a reflexive verb), to demean oneself valorously, to maintain one's ground, 823, 1107, 1130 See R "*contenement*, contenance, conduite, maintien, posture"
- Contentit hyme, behaved himself, 3219, Contentit them, 2634
- Contenyt, endured, 3190
- Contrietoun, contrition, 1415, 1426
- Contynans, demeanour, 1693, 1747
- Counter, encounter, attack, charge, 3239
- Couth, could, 793 A S *cunnan*, past tense, *ic cude*
- Cowardy, cowardice, 1023, 3287
- Cownterit, encountered, 2609, 2621 J
- Crownel, coronal, corolla of a flower, 59 J



- Cummyne, } came, 807, 907  
 Comyne, }  
 Cumyne, 650, 1136, } come (past  
 Cumyng, 447, } part)  
 Cummyng, 2498, }  
 Cunyng, knowledge, 1455  
 Cusynace, 1270, }  
 Cusynece, 2802, } kinswoman  
 Cusynes, 2287, }  
 Cwsynes, 1185, }  
 Cwre, care, 98, 266, 643 Lat  
*cura* (N B Though *Cwre* =  
*cura*, yet *cwa* should be dis-  
 tinguished from A S *cearu*)
- Dangei, power to punish, "the  
 power of a feudal lord over his  
 vassals," (Wright), 444 Also,  
 power to injure, 3006 See R  
*danger*
- Dans, (dance), in the phrase  
 "wrechet dans," evil mode of  
 life, 1321 See Chaucer's use  
 of *daunce*, and compare—  
 "I sai þow lely how thai lye  
 Dongen doun alle in a *daunce*"  
 Lawrence Minot, quoted in  
 Specimens of Early English,  
 by R Morris, p 194
- Dede, 90, } death Dan *dod*  
 Ded, 3304, } A S *deað* O N  
*daði*
- Deden, deign, 949 J  
 Dedenyt, deigned, 240  
 Deid, died, 215  
 Deith, dead (past part), 3160  
 Delitable, delightful, 1738 R  
*delitable*
- Delhuer, nimble, clever, 3134  
 Delhuerly, (cleverly), nimbly,  
 lightly, 3089, 3131 R *dehvre*  
 Demande, demur, 191, 397, 3052,  
 3354 See R "*demande*, con-  
 tremander, changer, revoquer  
 l'ordre donné"
- Depart, to part, 3421 R *depar tir*  
 Departit, parted, 3403
- Depaynt, painted, 46, 1703 F1  
*depeint* Ch *depeint*
- Depend me, waste or consume  
 (my poweis), 214, possibly  
 miswritten for *despend* Cf  
*Dispendit* Depend to, to con-  
 cern, appertain to, 466
- Deren, to speak out, tell, 2376  
 R *derarmer*
- Dereyne, a plea, 2313, "hath  
 o dereyne ydoo," hath appealed  
 to trial by combat R *deramier*
- Des, dars, high table, 2762 R  
*ders*, Lat *discus*
- Deut, availed, 18 See note
- Devith, } deafen, 92, 94 "Su-  
 Dewith, } G *deofwa*, Icel  
*deyfa*," J Compare Dan  
*dove* Burns has *deare*
- Dewod the, devoid thyself, 1022
- Deuoydit was = departed, 1031  
 Compare *Awdith*
- Dewyð, to tell, narrate, 373
- Discharg, to put aside one's lia-  
 bility, 163, 1665
- Disef, lack of ease, misery, 707
- Disoint (Disoint?), disjointed, out  
 of joint, hence uncertain, haz-  
 ardous, 2907 "Disjoint, A dif-  
 ficult situation" Halliwell
- Dispendit, spent, 1808 R *des-  
 pendre*
- Dispens, expenditure, 1746 F1  
*dépense*
- Dispolzeith, despoileth, 1879
- Dispone, to dispose, provide, or,  
 as a reflexive verb, to be dis-  
 posed to do, to intend, 54, 446,  
 980, 1590, 2428, 2462
- Disponit, declines (?), but much  
 more probably, intends, and we  
 must read "disponit not," 2984
- Dout, fear, 2599, 3404, 3438, (as  
 a verb), to fear, 740, 1827 Ch  
*doute* R *doubtance*
- Drent, drowned, 1319 A S *dren-  
 can*

- Dref (as a reflective verb), to direct oneself, proceed, go, 1975, 2288, 2486 Lat *dirigere*
- Drywith, drives, "he drywith to the end," i e concludes, 2470
- Duclar, declare, 3022
- Dulay, delay, 681, 788, 2925
- Effere, shew, pomp, 2360 Compare *Afferre*
- Efter, after, 217 A S *after*
- Eld, old age, 3225, 3242 A S *ylde* Gothic *alds*
- Elyk, Eliche, alike, 182, 2452
- Eme, uncle, 2572 A S *eam*
- Empit, emptied, empty, 180 A S *emtran*
- Emples, to please, 2455 J
- Empriß, worth, honour, 129, 269, 3458, cf Romans of Partenay, 1 2013 Anxiety, oppression, 393 R *empirndre*
- Enarmyt, fully armed, 285, 751, 2499 J
- Endit, indited, 138, indite, 206, inditing, poem (?), 334 If the meaning were, "this ends," the form "endis" would be required, besides which, the rime shews that the *i* is long, cf ll 138, 206
- Endlong, along, 2893 A S *andlang*, Ger *entlang*
- Entent, intention, will, meaning, thoughts, 448, 1451, 1499, 2938 R *entente* Used by Chaucer
- Entermet, to intermeddle with, to have do with, 2914 R *entre metre*
- Enweronyt, environed, 53
- Erde, earth, 1072, 1540, 2601 Compare Ger *erde*
- Erdly, earthily, 498
- Erth, earth, 128 A S *eorð*
- Eschef (1 eschew), to shun, withdraw himself, 3475 R *escheven*, (2 achieve), to accomplish, 2212, 2513 R *eschavin* Eschef deith, to die, 2732
- Eschevit, achieved, 258
- Eschevit, is achieved, 2998
- Es, 174, } ease
- Eef, 706, } ease
- Essençais (ensigns), warrens, 3349, J See also R *enseigne*
- Euermilkon, every one, 1039, etc
- Exasy, extasy, 76 (Possibly miswritten)
- Exortuth, beseecheth, 3026
- Extend, attain, 3281
- Falçais, fail, (3 pers plu. indicative), 1151
- Fairhed (fairhood), beauty, 577 In A S *feagernes*, but in Dan *forhed*
- Fall, to happen, befall, 493, 2139 A S *feallan*, Dan *falde*
- Fallyng, fallen, 1217, 1322
- Falowschip, used as we now use company, 1105, 2687, etc
- Falzeing, failing, 1499
- Falzet, Falzheit, failed, 1460, 1469, 1498, 1503
- Farhed, beauty, 2440 See *Fairhed*
- Fayndit (feigned), dissembled, 2397
- Fays, foes, 3006 A S *fāh*
- Fechtiand, fighting, 2691, 3127, 3407 Ger *fechten*
- Fechternis, fighters, 686
- Feill, knowledge, skill, 2854 J A S *fēlan*
- Fek (effect), sum, amount, result, drift, 2938 Fr *effet*
- Fell, to feel, 820, 2131
- Fellth, feeleth, 3368
- Fell, many, als fell, as many, 768 A S *fēala*, Gothic *filu*
- Fell, horrible, 260 A S *fell*, cruel, fierce
- Ferde, fourth, 815, 973, 2285 Compare Dan *fjerde*

- Ferleht, wondered, 3117 A S  
*fēr lu*, sudden, fearful Burns  
 has *ferlie*  
 Fet, fetched, 433, 1154 A S *fec-*  
*can*, past tense, *ic feahte*  
 Fongith, catcheth, seizeth, 1922  
 A S *fangan*, Goth *fahan*  
 Fortare, to fare amiss, to perish,  
 1348 A S *for faran*  
 Forlorn, lost, 3305 A S *for-*  
*loren*, cf Goth *fralusan*  
 For quhy, see *For-why*  
 For thi, } (there fore), on that ac-  
 For thy, } count, 332, 2261, 2731  
 A S *forthý*, where *thý* (Gothic  
*thē*) is the instrumental case of  
*se*, that  
 For wrocht (for wrought), over-  
 worked, wearied out, 888 A S  
*forwyrcan*  
 For why, 798, 925, 2209, } for  
 For quhy, 2171, 2342, 2290, } the  
 reason that, because that  
 Found, to advance, go, 2612 J  
 A S *fundian*, to try to find, go  
 forward  
 Franchis, generosity, 230 R *fran-*  
*chise*  
 Fremmytneß, strangeness, aliena-  
 tion, 1508 A S *fremdnes*  
 Froit, enjoyment, 1644, fruit,  
 2088, 2109 R *fruit*  
 Frome, from the time that, 17,  
 1432 Goth *frums*, a beginning  
 Fruschit, broken, dashed in pieces,  
 1201 R *frous*, broken, from  
 the verb *froer*  
 Fundyne, 497, } found (past  
 Fundyng, 465, } part)  
 Fyne, faithful, true, 519 See R  
 "fine, fidele," and "fine, for"  
 Fyne, end, 1388, 2081 Fr *fin*  
 Ganth, is suitable for, 991 Icel  
*gegna* J Compare Dan *gavne*  
 Ganyth, it, it profits, *used imper-*  
*sonally*, 121 R *gaagner*  
 Gare, to cause, 910, 2416 Dan  
*groie*, Icel *gura*  
 Gart, caused, 267, 2777  
 Gentillicß, 917, 1847 See *Gen-*  
*tiue*  
 Gentrice, 1307, 2757, } courtesy,  
 Gentrif, 2790 } nobleness  
 R *gentilesse*  
 Gere, gear, equipment, armour,  
 2777 A S *gearua*  
 Geit, 384 See *Gart*  
 Giffis, give thou, (ht give ye, the  
 plural being used in addressing  
 the king), 463 A S *gyfan*  
 Gifyne, given, 1752  
 Gilt, offended, done wrong, 699,  
 3015 A S *gyltan*  
 Grehhundis, greyhounds, 533,  
 537 "O N grey, grey hundr,  
 a bitch" Wedgwood  
 Goweine the, conduct thyself,  
 1598  
 Grawis, groves, 2481 Ch *greves*  
 Gyrf, grass, 10 A S *gers*  
 Gyrf, guise, fashion, custom, 545  
 Ch *gise*  
 Haade, had, 2150  
 Habariowne, habergeon, 2889  
 From *haubergeon*, the French  
 form of Ger *halsberge* See  
*Hawbrek*  
 Habimounne, habergeon, 3380  
 Heill, whole, 3246 A S *hæl*  
 Haknay, an ambling horse for a  
 lady, 1730 R *hacqueene*  
 Half, in the phrase on arthuris  
*half*, i e on Arthur's side, 883  
 Compare use of Germ *halb*  
 Halk, a hawk, 1736, 2482 A S  
*hafoc*  
 Hall, }  
 Hoil, } various spellings of Hail,  
 Holl, } whole  
 Hail, }  
 Hals, neck, 1054 A S *hals*  
 Goth. *hals*



- Hant, to exercise, practise, 2191  
 Fr *hanter*, lit to frequent
- Hardement, 801, 2669, } hardi  
 Hardyment, 900, 3362, } hood,  
 boldness R *hardement*
- Harrold, herald, 1047
- Hate, hot, 2552
- Havith, hath, 1940, have, 3404
- Hawbrek, 1070, 1200, } haubeik,  
 Hawbryk, 3112, } neck de-  
 fence, Ger *halz beige*, armour  
 for the neck
- Hawnt, to use, 3418 See *Hant*
- Hawntis, exercise, 2772
- He, high, 1969, 2552 A S  
*hāh*
- Hecht, hight, is called, 2140, was  
 called, 2290
- Hecht, to promise, 3101, promised  
*(past part)*, 1142 A S *hatan*
- Hedis, heads, 538, 869
- Hewy, 442, } heavy A S *hefig*  
 Heuy, 459, }
- Hie, 550, } high See *He*  
 Hye, 297, }
- Hienes, highness, 126
- Ho, pause, stop, cessation, 2970  
 According to J radically the  
 same with the verb *Houe*, or  
*How* (see *Hout*) The Dutch,  
 however, use *hou*, hold ' from  
*houden*, to hold
- Holl, whole, 106, 745
- Hore, hair, 365  
 "Holze were his yzen and vnder  
 campe hores"  
 (Early English Alliterative  
 Poems, ed Morris See Poem  
 B 1 1695) The meaning of  
 the line quoted is, "Hollow  
 were his eyes, and under bent  
 hairs"
- Hot, hight, was called, 754, 806,  
 is called, 1950 A S *hātan*  
 (neuter)
- Hout, delayed, tarried, halted,  
 996 "W *hofian hofio*, to
- fluctuate, hover, suspend,"  
 Morris
- Howith, stays, halts, 2829
- Howit, halted, 2814, 2842
- Howyns, halts, tarries, 2821 Pro-  
 bably miswritten for "howyng"
- Hufyng, halting, delaying, 1046
- Hundyre, a hundred, 756, 1554
- I, in, 332 Dan *i*, Icel *i*
- Iclosit, y-closed, i e enclosed,  
 shut in, 53
- If, to give, 554 In lines 1718-  
 1910 the word occurs repeat-  
 edly in several forms, as *iffis*,  
*iffith*, giveth, *iffis*, give ye (put  
 for give thou), *ifyne*, given,  
 etc
- Ifyne, to give, 3454
- Iftis, gifts, 1741 In the line  
 preceding we have *giftis*
- Ilk, the ilk (= thilk) that, 629,  
 1601 Literally, the ilk = the  
 same A S *ylc* See 1367
- Ilk, each, 2211, etc A S *æl*
- Illumynare, luminary, 3
- Incontinent, } immediately, 253,  
 Incontynent, } 1215, 2647, 2834  
 Still used in French
- In to contynent (= Incontinent),  
 3020
- In to, used for "in," *passim*
- Iornaye, journey, 680
- Irk, to become slothful, grow  
 weary, tire, 2709 A S *eargian*
- Iuperty, combat, 2547 Fr *jeu*  
*parti*, a thing left undecided,  
 hence the meanings, 1 strife,  
 conflict, 2 jeopardy, as in Ch  
 See J, and Tyrwhitt's note to  
 C T 16211
- Iwond, 245, } wounded We  
 Iwondit, 226, } find in A S  
 both *wūnd* and *wūnded*
- I-wyð, certainly, of a surety,  
 1709, 1925, 1938 A S *gewis*,  
 Ger *gewiss* Often wrongly in-

- terpreted to mean, *I know* See *Wit*
- Kend, known, 548, 906
- Laif, the remainder (lit what is left), 1802, 3472 A S *laf*  
Burns has "the *lave*"
- Lametable, lamentable, 3265 The omission of the *n* occurs again in l 2718, where we have *lemytable*
- Larges, liberality, 608, 1681, 1750  
Fr *largesse*
- Larg, prodigal, profuse, 2434
- Lat, impediment, 958 A S *létan*, means (1) to suffer, (2) to hinder
- Lat, to let, permit (used as an auxiliary verb), 803
- Latith, preventeth, 1927
- Law rare, a laurel, 82 Ch *lawen*
- Learns, lars, 493
- Leä, put down, beat down, depressed, overpowered, 2663  
It is the past tense of A S *leagan*, to lay, to cause to submit, to kill
- Lef, to live, 564, 3230
- Leful, lawful, 1427
- Legis, heges, subjects, 1957 R  
*lige*, Lat *ligatus*
- Leich, leech, physician, 106 A S *lêce*, Dan *læge* See 520, 2056
- Leif, to live, 952, 1392 A S *lybban*, Goth *liban*
- Leir, to learn, 1993 Comp D *leeren*
- Lest, to list, to please, 555, 621 A S *lystan*
- Lest, to last out against, sustain, 811 A S *lêstan*
- Lest, least, 1628
- Let, hindrance, 2495
- Leuch, laughed, 3240 A S *hlîhan*, past tense *ic hlôh*
- Lewis, liveth, 1209
- Lewith, left, deserted, 1854
- Liging, 376 The sense requires *lay*, i e the 3rd p s pt t m dic, but properly the word is the present participle, *lying*
- Longith, belongeth, 738, 1921, 2429, 2778 Compare Dan *lange*, to reach
- Longith, belonged, 3242
- Longyne, belonging, 433
- Lorn, lost, 2092, destroyed, 2740  
See *For lorn*
- Loß, praise, 1777 Lat. *laus*  
Ch has *losed*, praised
- Low, } (1) law, 1602, 1628, 1636,  
Lowe, } etc (2) love, 29, 1620  
It is sometimes hard to say which is meant Compare Dan *lov*, law, A S *luf*, love
- Luges, tents, 874, 881, 2500, 2680 Fr *loge*, *logis*, Ger *laube*, a bowler, from *laub*, foliage, Gothic *lauſ*, a leaf
- Lugyne, a lodging, tent, 891
- Lyt, a little, 1233 At lyte, in little, used as an expletive, 143
- Ma, short form of Make, 953
- Maad, made, 697
- Magre of, in spite of, 500, 960, 2679, 2702, 2711 Sometimes "magre" is found without "of" Fr *mal gré*
- Matalent, } displeasure, anger,  
Matelent, } 2169, 2660 In both cases Mr Stevenson wrongly has *maltalent* R *maltalent*, *mautalent*
- Mayne, 1026 See *Men*
- Medyre, mediator (?), 1624 I am not at all sure of this word, but we find in R many strange forms of "mediator," such as *mésener*, *méesnemes*, etc In the Supplement to the "Dictionnaire de l'Académie" we find *medraire*, qui occupe le milieu, from Low Lat *mediarius* N B

- In the MS the "d" is indistinct See *mediane* in Ducange
- Meit, to dream, 363 A S *mætan*
- Mekill, much, 876, 1236 Mokil, 1265
- Melle, contest, battle, 2619 Fr *melee*, J
- Memoratyve, mindful, bearing in remembrance, 1430 Fr *memoratif*
- Men, mean, way, "be ony men" = by any means, 2366, so, too, "be ony mayne," 1026 Fr *moyen*
- Men, to tell, declare, 510 A S *mænan*
- Menye, a company, multitude (without special reference to number), whence "a few menye," a small company, 751 Apparently from A S *menig*, Ger *menge*, but it may have nothing to do with the modern word *many*, and is more probably from the O F *maisonnée*, a household
- Met, dreamt, 440 See *Meit*
- Meyne, 41 See *Men*
- Misgvit, misguided, 1663 R *guier*
- Mo, more, 3187, etc A S *ma*
- Mon, man, 96
- Moneth, month, 569 A S *mónuð*, Goth *menoth*
- Morow, morning, 1, 30, 64, 341 Goth *maurgins*
- Mot, must, 195 A S *u mót*
- Mys, a fault, 1888, 1937, 3230 A S *mis* Do o myð, to commit a fault, 1926
- Mysour, measure, 1830
- Myster, need, 1877, 2322 Ch *mistere*, R *mester*, Lat *ministerium* Cf Ital *mestiere*
- Nat, naught, 703 Shortened from A S *ná wukt*, i e *no what*
- Nece, nephew, 2200, 2245, 2720 R *niez*
- Nedlyngis, of necessity, 2337, J A S *neadinga*
- Nemmyt, considered, estimated, 649, 2852 A S *nemnan*, to name, call
- Ner, near, 441
- Neulyngis, newly, again, 36, J A S *nwe lce* (?)
- Newis, for Nevis, nieves, fists, 1222 Icel *hnefi* Dan *næve* Burns has *nieve*, Shakspeare *neuf*
- Noght, not, 1182
- Nois, nose, 2714 R *néis*
- Nome, name, 226, 320, 1546, 3341 Fr *nomme*
- Nome, took, 591, 1048 A S *numan*, past tense, i e *nám*
- Northest, north east, 677
- Not (shortened from Ne wot), know not, 522, 3144 A S *nat*, from *nitan* = *ne witan*
- Not, naught, 720 See *Nat*
- Noyth, annoyeth, 904 Fr *nuire* Lat *nocere*
- Noyt, annoyed, offended, 471
- Nys, } (nice), foolish, 127, 1946
- Nyce, } Fr *nais*
- O, a, an, *passum*, one, a single, 2998, 3003, 3393, etc
- Obeisand, obedient, 641
- Obeð, obey, 2134
- Oblist, obliged, 969
- Occupyte, to use, employ, 3457, to dwell, 75 Lat *occupare*
- Of, with, 66
- Of-syð, oft times, 2304, 2594, 2789, 2885, 2929 See *Syð*
- On, and, 519 Possibly a mistake
- One, on, often used for In, One to = unto
- Onan, } anon, 158, 1466, 2602,
- Onone, } etc The form "onan,"
- Onon, } 1 3086, suggests the

- derivation of *anon*, viz from  
A S *on an*, in one, hence,  
forthwith, immediately
- Onys, once, at some time or  
other, 3013, at onys, at once,  
3187
- Opin, 1286, } open  
Opine, 13, }
- Or, ere, before, 77, 1887, 2545  
A S *œr*
- Ordand, to set in array, 784, to  
prepare, procure, 1713 R  
*ordener*, Lat *ordinare*
- Ordan, to provide, 2416, 2777
- Ordynat, ordained, 490 See 1  
507
- Orest (=Arest), to arrest, stop,  
3186
- Oment, east, 5
- Oucht, it, it is the duty of (= Lat  
*debet*), 2995 Strictly, we  
should here have had "it  
owes" (*debet*), not "it ought"  
(*debet*) See *Aw*
- Ourfret, over adorned, decked out,  
71, 2480 A S *fretwian*, to  
trim, adorn
- Out throng (= Lat *expressit*), ex-  
pressed, uttered, 65 A S *ūt*,  
out, and *pringan*, to press
- Owtrag, outrage, 3454 R *out-  
rage*, Ital *oltraggio*, from Lat  
*ultra* The MS has *outray*,  
probably owing to confusion  
with *affray* in the same line  
We find "owtrag" in l 2578
- Oyf, to use, 1701, J
- Paid, pleased, ill paid, displeased,  
908 Low Lat *paganē*, to pay,  
satisfy
- Palgonis, pavilions, tents, 734,  
*plural of*
- Palgounē, a pavilion, a tent, 1305  
R gives *pavillon*, a tent, cf  
Low Lat *papilio*, a tent
- Pan, pain, 1273
- Pas hyme, to pace, go, 362
- Paß, to go, 1213
- Pasing, pacing, departing, 371,  
surpassing, 303, 346, 689, etc
- Pens, to think of, 1431 Fr  
*penser*
- Planly, at once, 3319 J gives  
"Playn, out of hand, like fr  
*de plain*" In the same line  
"of" = off
- Plant, plaint, complaint, 137 Fr  
*plainte*
- Plesance, Plesans, pleasure, 941,  
1939
- Plessith, pleases, 68
- Possede, to possess, 578 Fr  
*posseder*
- Poware, a power, a strong band of  
men, 2647 We now say *force*
- Powert, poverty, 1330, 1744
- Pref, to prove, 2229, 3476
- Piekand, picking, spinning, 3089  
See the very first l of Spenser's  
*Faerie Queene*
- Prekyne, 2890, showy (?) gaudy (?)  
J gives "Preek, to be spruce,  
to crest, as 'A bit *preekin* bodie,'  
one attached to dress, to *prich*,  
to dress oneself" Compare D  
*prychen*
- Pretend, to attempt, aspire to,  
3282, 3465 Fr *prétendre*  
So, too, in lines 559, 583
- Pretendit, endeavour, attempt,  
3442
- Process, narration, 316 Wright  
gives "Proces, a story or rela-  
tion, a process" The writer is  
referring to his prologue or in-  
troduction
- Promyt, to promise, 965
- Propont, proposed, 361, 445
- Pupil, people, 285
- Puple, people, 1367, 1498, 1520
- Pur, 1648, }
- Pure, 1697, } poor
- Pwre, 1655, }

- Quh- Words beginning thus begin in modern English with Wh  
 Thus, Quhen = when, etc  
 Quhilk (whilk), which, 184 A S *hwylc* = Lat *qualis* rather than *qui*  
 Quhill, while, used as a noun, 1229, 1293 A S *hwil*, a period of time  
 Quhill, until, 24, 198 See *Whill*  
 Quhy, the quhy = the why, the reason, 123, 1497  
 Qwhelis, wheels, 736 A S *hwel*  
 Qwheyar, whether, 1187  
 Quhois, } whose, 171, 1297  
 Qwhois, }  
 Rachis, hounds, 531 Su G *racka*, a bitch, which from the v *racka*, to race, course Perhaps connected with *brach*  
 Radur, fear, 1489, J From Su G *rædd*, fearful, Dan *ræd*  
 Raddour, 2133, } fear  
 Radour, 1835, 3465, }  
 Raid, rode, 3070, 3260, etc  
 Ralef, relieve, 3364  
 Ramed, remedy, 117 See *Remed*  
 Randoune, in, 2542 The corresponding line (l 739) suggests that in *Randoune* = *al about*, i.e. in a circuit But if we translate it by "in haste," or "in great force," we keep nearer to the true etymology In Ogilvie's Imperial Dictionary, s.v. Random, we find the Noī Fr *randonnée* explained to mean the "sweeping circuit made by a wounded and frightened animal," but the true meaning of *randonnée* is certainly *force*, *impetuosity*, see R, Cotgrave, etc In Danish, *rand* is a surrounding edge or margin, while in Dutch we find *rondom* round about  
 Raquer, requie, 2409  
 Raſ, race, swift course, 3088 A S *raes* Compare Eng *mill-race*, and D *ra*  
 Recidens, delay, 2359 R *residiet*, to defer  
 Recist, resist, 566, 660, 2578  
 Recounteint, met (in a hostile manner), encountered, 2958 Fr *rencontrer*  
 Record, witness, testimony, hence value, 388 R *record*  
 Recorde, to speak of, mention, hard recorde, heard say, 121, 595  
 Recorde, speak out, 454, 481 See R *recorder*  
 Recordith, issuitable, belongs, 606  
 Recourse, to return, 1798 Lat *recurere*  
 Red, to advise, 1027, 1198 A S *rædan*, Goth *rīdan*  
 Relewit (relieved), lifted up again, rescued, 2617 Fr *reluc* J  
 Remede, 89, } remedy  
 Remed, 718, }  
 Remut, remove, 655  
 Report, to narrate, 266, to explain, 294, to state, 320  
 Reprefe, reproof, defeat, 764  
 Reput, he reputed, i.e. thought, considered, 743  
 Resaut, received, 2796  
 Resawit, received, kept, 2106 We should have expected to find "reseruit"  
 Resonite, resounded, 66  
 Resydens, delay 670 See *Recidens*  
 Revare, 275, }  
 Rewar, 2893, } river  
 Rewere, 2812, }  
 Reweyll, proud, haughty, 2853 R *revele*, fier, hautain, oiguel leux Compare Lat *rebellare*  
 Richwysnes, righteousness, 1406 A S *rihtwises*



- Rigne, 94, 1527, } a kingdom Fr  
 Ring, 1468, } *regne* Ch  
 Range, 1325, } *regne*  
 Rignis, kingdoms, 1858  
 Rignis, Rignith, reigneth, 1825, 782  
 Ringne, a kingdom, 1952  
 Rout, a company, a band, 812, 2956, 3403 Rowt, 2600  
 Rowmyth, roometh, i.e. makes void, empties, 3390 A S *rūman*  
 Rown, run, *past part* 2488, 2820  
 Rwn, run, 2545  
 Rygnis, kingdoms, 1904  
 Ryne, to run, 113 See 2952  
 Ryng, to rign, 1409, 2130  
  
 Sa, so, 3322, 3406 Dan *sau*  
 Saude, said, 698  
 Salust, saluted, 546, 919, 1553, 2749 Ch *saluti*  
 Salosing, salutation, 1309  
 Sar, sorely, 1660  
 Sauch, saw, 817, 1219, 1225 A S *ic sedh*, from *seón*  
 Schawin, shewn, 2387  
 Schent, disgraced, ruined, 1880 A S *scendan*, Dan *skende*  
 Schrewit, accursed, 1945  
 Scilla, the name of a bird, also called Cris, 2483  
 — "plumis in avem mutata vocatur Cris, et a tonso est hoc nomen adepta capillo"—(Ovid, Met viii 150)  
 Screwis, shrews, ill-natured persons, 1053 More often used of males than females in old authors  
 Seduls, letters, 142 R *cedule*  
 Sege, a seat, 2258 Fr *siege*  
 Semble, a warlike assembly, hostile gathering, 988, 2206  
 Semblit, assembled, 845 G *sammeln*, from Goth. *sama, samana*  
 Semblyng, encountering, 2951 See *Assemble*  
  
 Sen, since, 709, 800, etc Sen at, since that In Piers Plowman we find *syn*  
 Septure, sceptic, 666  
 Seie, several, various, 594, 731, 746 "Su G *sai*, adv denoting sepuation" J Cf Lat *se*  
 Sess, to cease, 14, etc Fr *cesser*  
 Set, although  
 Sew, to follow up, seek, 2326 R *sui*, Fr *suivre*  
 Scw, to follow up, go, proceed, 3145 Scwy, 2614  
 Shauyth, shewith, 412  
 Sice, such, 2115 Scotch, *sic*  
 Snybbyth, snubs, checks, 3387 (Comp D *snech*, a beak, *snebbing*, snappish  
 Sobing, sobbing, mourning, 2658  
 Socht, } sought to go, and hence,  
 Soght, } made his (or then) way, proceeded, went, 2619, 3179, 3357, 3428 Sought one, advanced upon, attacked, 3149, 3311 Sought to, made his way to, 3130 A S *secan*, past tense *ic sochte*, to seek, approach, go towards  
 Sor, sorrow, anxiety, 74 A S *soih*, Goth *sauja*  
 Sort, lot, fate, 26 Fr *sort*  
 Sound, to be consonant with, 149 See Gloss to Tyrwhitt's Chaucer Lat *sonare*  
 Soundith, 1811 "So the puple soundith," so the opinion of the people tends  
 "As fer as southeith into honestee"  
 (Chancer *Monikes Prologue*)  
 Soundith, tend, 1943, tends, 149  
 Sown, sound, 1035 Fr *son*  
 Sownis, sounds, 772, 3436  
 Spent, fastened, clasped, 2809 A S *spannan*, to clasp, join  
 Comp Dan *sprende*, to stretch, span, buckle together

- Spere, } sphere, 6, 170, speris,  
Spir, } spheres, circuits, 24  
Spere, to inquire, 1170 A S  
*spuran*, to track Cf G  
*spur*  
Sperithus, spear's, 810  
Spill, to destroy, ruin, 1990  
A S *spillan*  
Spreit, spirit, 81, 364  
Stak, 226 J gives "to the  
steeks, *completely*," and this  
is the sense here See Jamie-  
son s v "Steak" Halliwell  
gives *stake*, to block up, also  
*steck*, a stopping place (cf  
Shakespeare's *sticking place*,  
Macb 1 vii 1 60) In the N  
of France it is said of one killed  
or severely wounded, *il a eu*  
*son estoque*, he has had his  
belly full, from *estiquer*, to  
cram, satiate, "stodge" Com  
pare Ital *stucco*, cloyed It  
has also been suggested that  
*to the stak* may mean to the  
*stock*, i e up to the hilt, very  
deeply  
Start, started up, leapt, 994,  
1094  
Stede, stead, place, 218, 1124  
A S *stede*  
Steir, to stir, 817 A S *stiran*  
Stekith, shuts, 1651 Ger *stecken*  
Burns has *steak*  
Stek, shut, concluded, 316  
Stell, steel, 809 Stell commonly  
means a stall, or fixed place,  
but the form *stell* for *steel*  
occurs, e g "Brounstelle was  
heuy and also kene" *Arthur*,  
1 97  
Sterapis, 3056, } stirrups A S  
Steropis, 3132, } *stir-ap* or *stige-*  
*rap*, from *stigan*, to mount, and  
*rap*, rope  
Stere, ruler, arbiter, 1020, con-  
trol, guidance, 1974  
Stere, to rule, control, 1344, 2884,  
A S *stýrun*  
Stere, to stir, move, go, 3430  
See *Steir*  
Sterith, stirreth, 2829  
Sterf, to die, 1028 A S *steorfan*  
Sterit, governed, 612 A S *stýgran*  
Stert, started, 377  
Stok, the stake to which a baited  
bear is chained, 3386  
Stour, conflict, 1108, 2607, 3124  
R *estour*  
Straucht, stretched out, 3090 A S  
*streccan*, past part *gestreht*  
Strekith, stretcheth, i e exciteth  
to his full stride, 3082  
Subnet, 1799, } subject, sub  
Subetis, 1828, } jects  
Subietis, 1878, }  
Sudandly, Sodandly, suddenly,  
1009, 1876  
Suet, sweet, 331  
Suppris, (surprise), overwhelming  
power, 691, 860, 2651, oppres-  
sion, 1352 Fr *surprendre*, to  
catch unawares  
Supprisit, overwhelmed, 1237,  
1282, overpowered, 2705,  
3208 Supprisit ded, suddenly  
killed, 3125  
Surryzenis, surgeons, 2726  
Suth, sooth, true, 110 A S *sōð*  
Suthfastnes, truth, 1183. A S  
*sōðfastnes*  
Sutly, soothly, truly, 963  
Swelf, a gulf such as is in the  
centre of a whirlpool, a vortex,  
1318, J A S *swelgan*, to swal-  
low up  
Sweuen, a dream, 440 A S *swefn*  
Swth, sooth, true, 2753 See  
*Suth*  
Syne, 2026, }  
Synne, 2029, } sin  
Syne, afterwards, next J 45,  
794, etc  
Syð, times, 3054 A S *sōð*

- Tms, 1095, 3005, } takes Abbie-  
 faus, 1141 } vited, as  
 "ma" is from "make" See *Ma*  
 Tane, taken, 264  
 Ten, grief, vexation, 2646, 3237  
   *A S teonan*, to vex  
 Tennandis, tenants, vassals hold-  
 ing fiefs, 1729 *R tenancier*  
 Than, then, 3111  
 The, (1) they, (2) thee, (3) thy  
 Thelke, that, 709 See l 629,  
   where *the 7th* occurs, and see  
   *Ilk*  
 Thur, these, those, 2734, 2745,  
   2911, 3110, etc  
 Ththingis, tidings, 2279 *A S*  
   *tidan*, to happen  
 Tho, then, 545, 2221, them, 2368  
 Thoore, there, 628 Thore, 1102  
 Thrd, third, 370, 2347, 2401  
   *A S þrida*  
 Throng, closely pressed, crowded,  
   3366 *A S þrungan*  
 Til, to, til have, to have, 706  
 Tint, lost, 1384 See *Tyne*  
 Tithandis, tidings, 2310  
 Tithingis, tidings, 902, 2336  
 To, too, besides, 3045  
 Togidder, together, 254  
 To-kerwith, carves or cuts to  
   pieces, al to-kerwith, cuts all  
   to pieces, 868 *A S to ceorþan*  
 The prefix *to-* is intensive, and  
 forms a part of the verb See  
 Judges ix 53 "All to brake  
 his skull," i.e. utterly brake,  
 sometimes misprinted "all to  
 break" (!)  
 Ton, taken, 1054, 1071  
 Ton, one, the ton, the one, 1822  
   The tone = *A S þæt dne*  
 To schent, disfigured, 1221 The  
 intensive form of the *A S* verb  
*scendan*, to shame, destroy In  
 the same line we have *to-hunt*,  
 and in the next line *to rent*,  
 words modelled on the same  
 form We find, e.g., in Spenser,  
 the forms *all to rent*, *all to*  
*bru's'd* (See the note on the  
 prefix *To-* in the Glossary to  
 William of Palerne)  
 Tothu, the other, 2536 The tothr  
 = *A S þæt opere*, where *þæt* is  
 the neuter gender of the definite  
 article Burns has *the tither*  
 Toyer (= tother), the other, *y* be-  
 ing written for the *A S þ (th)*,  
 2571, 2584  
 Trust, to trust, to be confident,  
 390, 1129, 1149, *J Trust*,  
 1659  
 Trusting of (trusting), reliance  
 upon, or expectation of, 25, *J*  
 Translat, 508, } to transfer, i.e.  
 Transulat, 2204, } move  
 Tratoiy, treachery, 3224 See *R*  
   *trator*  
 Trcty, treatise, 145 *Fr traité*  
 Trewis, truce, 1568, 2488, 2545  
 Tronsione, 239, } a trun-  
 Trunscyoune, 2962, } cheon, a  
 Trownsciown, 2890, } stump of  
   a spear *Fr tronçon*, from  
   *Lat truncus* In the last pas-  
   sage it means a sceptre, *baton*  
 "One hytte hym vpon the olde wounde  
   Wyth A tronchon of an ore, ' (oar)  
   (Le Morte Arthur, l 3071)"  
 Trought, tith, 161  
 Tueching, 403, } touching  
 Tweching, 386, }  
 Tyne, to lose, 1258, 1387 *Icel*  
   *týna*  
 Tynith, loseth, 1761  
 Tynt, lost, 175, 1384, 1521  
 Unwist, unknown, 1140  
 Valis, falls, we should read  
   "falis," 2475  
 Valkyne, to waken, 8 See *Awalk*  
 Vall, billow, wave, 1317 *Ger*  
   *welle*, a wave, *quelle*, a spring,

- Icel *vella*, to *well* up, *boul* Cf also A S *wel*, Du *wiel*, Lan cashire *weele*, an eddy, whirl pool So, too, in Burns —
- "Whyles owre a linn the burnie plays,  
As thro the glen it wimpl t,  
Whyles round a rocky seaur it stays,  
Whyles in a *wiel* it dimpl t"
- Varand, to warrant, protect, 3411  
R *warandir*
- Varnit, warned, 622
- Vassolag, a deed of prowess Pas-  
sing vassolag, surpassing valour,  
257 R has *vasselage*, courage,  
valour, valourous deeds, as in-  
dicative of the fulfilment of the  
duties of a *vassal* We now  
speak of rendering *good service*
- Vassolage, valour, 2724
- Veir, were, 818
- Veris, wars, 305 See *Were*
- Veryng, were, 2971 A S *wéron*
- Vicht, a wight, a person, 10, 55,  
67 A S *uht*
- Virslyng, wrestling, struggling,  
3384 J gives the forms *war-*  
*sell*, *wersell*
- Visare, wiser, 607
- Viting, to know, 410 A S  
*witan*
- Vncouth, lit *unknown*, hence  
little known, rare, valuable,  
1734 A S *uncuð*
- Vodis, woods, 1000
- Vombe, womb, bowels, 375  
Goth *wamba*
- Vondit, wounded, 700
- Vpwarpith, warped up, i e drawn  
up, 63 See Note to this line  
It occurs in Gawain Douglas's  
prologue to his translation of  
the 12th Book of the *Æneid*  
Du *opwerpen*, from Goth *wat-*  
*pan*, to cast
- Vsyte, used, 1197, 1208
- Vyre, a cross-bow bolt, 1092 R  
*vire*, cf Lat *vertere*
- Wald, would, 419, 470, etc
- Walkin, to waken, wake, 1239  
See *Aualh*
- Wapnis, weapons, 241 A S  
*wæpen*, or *wēpn*
- Ward, world, 3184 Glose's  
Provincial Dictionary gives  
*Ward* = world, and the omis-  
sion of the *l* is not uncommon,  
see *Genesis and Exodus* (E E  
T S), II 32, 1315
- Wassolage, valour, 2708 See  
*Vassolag*
- Wat, know, 512
- Wawasours, vavasours, 1729 A  
*Vavasour* was a sub vassal, hold-  
ing a small fief dependent on a  
larger fief, a sort of esquire  
R *vavaseur*
- Weil, very Weil long, a very long  
time, 79 Comp Ger *wel*,  
J
- Wencussith, vanquisheth, 3331,  
vanquished, 3337
- Wencust, vanquished, 2841
- Wend, (1) to go, 2191, (2) weened,  
thought, 3481
- Wentail, ventaile, a part of the  
helmet which opened to admit  
air, 1056 R *ventaille*, from  
Lat *ventus*
- Were, (1) war Fr *guerre* R  
*werre*, 308, etc (2) doubt, 84,  
etc "But were," without doubt  
A S *wēr*, cautious, *wary* (3)  
worse, 1930 Burns has *waur*
- Wering, weary, 58 A S *wérg*
- Werray, very, true, 1262, 2017
- Werroure, warrior, 248
- Weriour, warrior, 663
- Wers, worse, 515
- Weryng, were, 2493
- Wex, to be grieved, be vexed, 156
- Weyn, vain, 382, 524
- Weyne, *in phr* but weyne, with-  
out doubt, 2880 A S *wénan*,  
to ween, to suppose

- Whill, until, 1136, J Formed  
 from A S *hwil*, a period of time  
 Wice, advice, counsel, 1909  
 Shortened from Awys  
 Wichsauf, vouchsafe, 355, 1391  
 Wichsauf, *id* 2364  
 Wicht, wight, person, 131  
 Wicht, strong, numble, 248 "Su-  
 G *wig*," J Sw *wig*  
 Wight, with, 918 Possibly mis-  
 written  
 Wist, knew, 225, 1047 See *Wit*  
 Wit, to know, 268 A S *witan*,  
 pres *ic wat*, past tense, *u*  
*wiste*  
 Wit, knowledge, 2504  
 With, by, 723  
 Withschaf, vouchsafe, 1458  
 With-thy, on this condition, 961  
 See *For thy*  
 Wnkouth, little known, 146 See  
*Vncouth*  
 Wnwommyt, undefiled, 2097  
 A S *wam*, *wem*, a spot  
 Wnwyst, unknown, secretly, 219,  
 269  
 Wod (wood), mad, 3334, 3440  
 A S *wōd* Goth *wōds*  
 Woud, mad, 2695 Perhaps we  
 should read *woud*  
 Wonde, wand, rod, or sceptre of  
 justice, 1601, 1891 J  
 Wonk, winked, 1058  
 Wonne, to dwell, 2046 A S  
*wunian*  
 Worschip, honour, 1158, 1164  
 A S *weorðscape*  
 Wot, know, 192, etc See *Wit*  
 Wox, voice, 13 Lat *vox*  
 Woyð, voice, 3473  
 Wrechtnes, misery, 2102, miser-  
 liness, niggardliness, 1795, 1859  
 Wy, reason, "to every wy," for  
 every reason, on all accounts,  
 2356 Compare *Quhy*  
 Wycht, strong, numble, 2592 See  
*Wicht*  
 Wynth,getteth,acqueth, 1832  
 Wyre, a cross bow bolt, 3290 See  
*Wyne*  
 Wys, vice, 1795 Wysis, 1540  
 Y, written for "th" Thus we  
 find "oyer" for "other," etc  
 The error arose with scribes  
 who did not understand either  
 the true form or force of the  
 old symbol þ  
 Yuf, gave, 387  
 Yald, yield, 553, yielded, 558  
 A S *gildan*  
 Yclepit, called, 414  
 Yef, give, 563  
 Yeuf, give, 923  
 Yer, year, 610 Used instead of  
 the plural "years," as in l  
 3243  
 Yewyne, given, 1500  
 Ygrave, buried, 1800 Comp  
 Ger *begraben*  
 Yhere, ear, 1576  
 Yhei, year, 2064 Used instead  
 of "years," 3243  
 Yhis, yes, 1397  
 Yis, yes, 514, this, 160  
 Ylys, isles, 2858, 2882  
 Ymong, among, 821  
 Yneuch, enough, 2135 A S *genog*  
 Yolde, yielded (to be), 951, 1088  
 Ystatut, appointed, 2529 Fr  
*statuer*  
 Ywyð, certainly, 1798, 1942 See  
*Iwyð*  
 3eme, to take of, regard, have re-  
 spect to, 665 A S *gēman*  
 3ere, year, 342  
 3erys, years, 23, 1432  
 3ewith, giveth, 1772  
 3ha, yes, 2843 Ger *ja*  
 3he, ye, 921 Observe that, as in  
 this line, *ye* (A S *ge*) is the  
*nominative*, and *you* (A S *eow*)  
 the *objective* case  
 3hed, went, 1486 Ch has *yede*

A S <i>ic eóde</i> , past tense of <i>gán</i> ,	2772
to go Goth <i>ik idāja</i> , past	3hud, went, 2696 See 3hed
tense of <i>gaggan</i> , to go	3is, yes, 3406
3her, year, 2064, 2274	3olde, yielded, 291, 380, 951
3hing, young, 2868	A S <i>ic geald</i> , past tense of
3his, yes, 1397	<i>gyldan</i> , to pay, to yield
3houth-hed, youth hood, youth,	3ude, went, 2944 See 3hed

## INDEX OF NAMES, ETC

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p> Albanak, 202, 1447<br/> Alexander, 1837<br/> Alphest, 57<br/> Amytans, 1304, 2446<br/> Angus, 2858<br/> April, 1<br/> Arachell, 434<br/> Ari s, 336<br/> Arthur (<i>passim</i>)<br/> Ban, 202, 1447<br/> Bible, the, 1483<br/> Brandellus, 3086<br/> Brandymagus, 2884, 3430<br/> Camelot, 275, 280, 357, 407<br/> Cardole, 2153<br/> Carlisle, 347<br/> Christ, 2046<br/> Clamedeus, 2881, 3259<br/> Dagenet, 278<br/> Daniel, 1365<br/> Danzelome, 435<br/> Esquyrus, 2591, 2609, etc<br/> First conquest king, 1064, etc ,<br/> 2568, etc<br/> Gahers, 3087<br/> Gaiot (<i>passim</i>)<br/> Galys Gwyans, 2605, 2613, etc<br/> Galygantynis, 599<br/> Galloway, 2690<br/> Gawane (<i>passim</i>)<br/> Gwynans or Gwyans See <i>Galys</i><br/> Gyonde or Gyande, 302, 551, 637<br/> Harwy, 2853, 3206, etc<br/> Herynes (i.e. Hermes), 436<br/> Hundred knights, king of, 1545,<br/> 1554 </p> | <p> Jhesu, 2046, 2096<br/> Kay, 254, 355, 3081, etc<br/> Lady of the Lake, 220, 223<br/> Lancelot (<i>passim</i>), appears as the<br/> red knight, 991, etc , as the<br/> black knight, 2430, etc<br/> Logris, 2301<br/> Malcunus, 806 See <i>Malenginys</i><br/> Malenginys, 2873, 3151, 3155 See<br/> also <i>Hundred knights, king of</i><br/> May, 12<br/> Melyhalt, 283, 895<br/> Melyhalt, lady of (<i>passim</i>)<br/> Moses, 436<br/> Nembrot (i.e. Nimrod), 435<br/> Nohalt, 255<br/> Phœbus, 24, 2472, 2486.<br/> Priapus, 51<br/> Round Table, 795, 3213<br/> Saturn, 2474<br/> Scilla, 2483<br/> Solomon, 1378<br/> Sygramors, 3083<br/> Titan, 335<br/> Valydone, 3249 See <i>Walydeyne</i>.<br/> Vanore, 575 See <i>Wanore</i><br/> Virgin (Mary), 2049, 2087, etc<br/> Venus, 309<br/> Wales, 599, 2153<br/> Walydeyne, 2879<br/> Wanore, 230<br/> Wryne, 2867<br/> Ydrus, 2851, 3152<br/> Ywan, 2606, 2618, etc<br/> Ywons, 2861 </p> |
|--|---|